1		
2	FED	DERAL TRADE COMMISSION
3		
4		
5		INDEX
6		
7		
8	OPENING REMARKS	PAGE
9	CHAIRMAN KOVACIC	4
10		
11	KEYNOTE ADDRESS	PAGE
12	CHIEF JUDGE MICHEL	100
13		
14	PANELS	PAGE
15	1	13
16	2	128
17	3	202
18		
19		
20		
21		
22		
23		
24		
25		
		For The Record, Inc.

For The Record, Inc.

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

1	FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION
2	
3	
4	FEDERAL TRADE COMMISSION)
5	HEARING ON:)
6	THE EVOLVING IP MARKETPLACE) Docket No.
7) PO93900
8)
9)
10	
11	FRIDAY, DECEMBER 5, 2008
12	
13	Conference Center
14	Federal Trade Commission
15	601 New Jersey Avenue, N.W.
16	Washington, D.C. 20580
17	
18	The above-entitled hearing was held, pursuant
19	to notice, at 9:35 a.m.
20	
21	
22	
23	
24	
25	
	For The Record, Inc.

Τ	PROCEEDINGS
2	
3	MS. MICHEL: Thank you, and welcome to the
4	first in a series of FTC hearings on the evolving
5	intellectual property marketplace. I am Suzanne Michel.
6	I'm the Assistant Director of Policy in the Bureau of
7	Competition here. If you have any questions throughout
8	the day, please feel free to ask me or any of the people
9	that you see with one of these name tags like I have,
L O	with the blue around the corner. We're all working on
11	the project, and we'll be able to help you.
L2	I'm going to make a couple of security
L3	announcements and then introduce Chairman Bill Kovacic
L 4	for opening remarks.
L5	First of all, in the case that there is a fire
L 6	alarm or evacuation, please walk directly across the
L7	street in front of Georgetown Law School. We will be
L 8	rallying there, and we will have to check off that
L 9	everyone who came into the building came out of the
20	building.
21	If you do go out for lunch, we'll be having an
22	hour and a half lunch break. In fact, you will have to
23	go out for lunch. There's no food in the building. I
24	believe you do need to go back through security when you
25	come back in, so please give yourself a couple of
	For The Record, Inc.

```
1 minutes to do that.
```

- 2 Chief Judge Michel would like to start promptly
- 3 at one o'clock and I know that no one will want to miss
- 4 his remarks. I had a preview and a discussion yesterday
- 5 with him, and you will not want to miss it.
- If you see any suspicious activity, please let any
- 7 of the staff or security people know.
- 8 It is now my pleasure to introduce the Chairman
- 9 of the Federal Trade Commission, Bill Kovacic. As I
- 10 think you will hear, the Chairman has been a very
- 11 enthusiastic supporter of FTC involvement in this arena
- 12 at the interface of competition and patent law.
- Indeed, he's very much been the inspiration for
- the project that we launched today, so I give you
- 15 Chairman Kovacic.
- 16 (Applause.)
- 17 CHAIRMAN KOVACIC: Thank you, Suzanne, and I am
- 18 enormously pleased to be here at the beginning of what I
- 19 am certain will be a fantastic workshop, and my delight
- in seeing us convene this event is closely related to my
- 21 view about what the Federal Trade Commission ought to be
- doing.
- 23 It's just about 40 years since the FTC had a
- near death experience, in 1969 and 1970, where basic
- 25 questions were raised about whether the institution

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 itself ought to continue, and the view of a number of
```

- 2 observers in thinking about what the way ahead of the
- 3 agency should be focused heavily on the conception of
- 4 what the agency's comparative advantages and possible
- 5 contributions to policy-making were.
- And the most formative event at that time was a
- 7 report that the ABA did in 1969 that said that the high
- 8 ground for the Commission consisted of following a
- 9 couple of specific approaches.
- 10 First, there was the view that the Commission
- 11 would pay the rent by dealing with the difficult issues.
- To paraphrase Jack Kennedy, we do the hard things
- 13 because they are difficult, and we take them on because
- they involve some of the most complex and intricate
- 15 issues. The Commission's comparative advantage, given
- its institutional features, ought to consist of taking
- on guestions that involve particularly complex issues of
- 18 law and economics.
- 19 Second, was that the configuration of the Agency,
- 20 which is partly an enforcement body, it is partly a
- 21 think tank, it is partly an organ for research and
- policy, it is partly a device to convene discussions
- 23 of important issues, ought to consist in using all of
- 24 these tools in a way to come up with more
- comprehensive diagnoses and assessments of specific

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 phenomena and to develop solutions that reflect a
```

- 2 thoughtful, careful use of all the tools at its
- 3 disposal.
- 4 That's exactly the subject matter of the program
- 5 today, which in many ways is an extension of activities
- 6 that the Commission has pursued in various forms over
- 7 its lifetime, going back to formative initial cases in
- 8 its first decade, but more recently to a fuller and more
- 9 elaborate use of all of the policy-making instruments at
- 10 its disposal.
- 11 What do these proceedings reflect or
- 12 acknowledge? First, is coming up with good solutions
- with respect to intellectual property. Competition
- policy requires a genuinely multi-disciplinary
- 15 perspective. The historical tendency was to focus on a
- specific discipline and to develop a deep understanding
- 17 within that discipline is simply inadequate in this
- 18 area.
- I think all of us have come to recognize that
- 20 the fields of competition law and IP law in many ways
- 21 reflect different cultures, different disciplines,
- 22 different fields of preparation, and a flaw in
- 23 policy-making in the past was the failure to integrate
- them, and as a consequence, with the application of only
- one discipline, one saw serious policy distortions as

For The Record, Inc.

```
one field or the other tried to equilibrate, to push
```

- 2 back what were perceived to be excesses generated in the
- 3 institutions and decision-making of the other.
- 4 So today's program is in part a recognition of
- 5 the importance of doing genuinely interdisciplinary
- 6 work. The second is the recognition that institutional
- 7 arrangements count and matter a great deal, that to a
- 8 large extent, when we have discussions about specific
- 9 topics or phenomena, when you go to conferences and
- 10 certainly when you go to academic settings, there's a
- 11 tendency to focus on issues of doctrine, abstractions
- 12 related to the theory associated with the choice of
- 13 specific substantive standards.
- What's neglected is a discussion of the
- 15 institutional arrangements through which doctrine is
- developed and applied over time, and of course doctrine
- isn't suspended in air. It runs on institutional
- platforms, and the society that hopes to achieve
- 19 superior broadband-like policy results can't do so if
- it's running policy on dial-up institutions.
- 21 So part of the initiative here has reflected an
- 22 effort to focus on the institutional arrangements
- 23 through which policy is made and to ask how can they be
- improved, because I think this is part of a greater
- 25 global awareness, that the jurisdiction that achieves

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 superior institutional design, achieves superior
```

- 2 substantive outcomes while minimizing the cost of
- 3 applying those institutions is going to have an enormous
- 4 degree of competitive advantage over time, and its
- 5 citizens will enjoy greater prosperity because the
- 6 effort to get the institutional arrangements right has
- 7 proceeded with a great degree of continuing effort.
- 8 A final thought about the approach and
- 9 philosophy that animates these proceedings today. We
- 10 see this as part of a continuing conversation. As
- 11 Suzanne and her colleagues will point out, this is first
- of a series of events. We found increasingly that
- 13 rather than trying to point to a single decisive event,
- 14 where everything is tied together in a conclusive way in
- 15 a particular field, that in areas such as this one, the
- model that works best is to have a continuing series of
- 17 discussions and public consultations.
- 18 We see this as the first of several sessions,
- but I would anticipate over time, given the investment
- that's been made in the past, that what will
- 21 characterize success in this area is a continuity of
- 22 effort, not simply over the coming months but over the
- 23 coming years where we use, in many ways, our capacity to
- 24 act as a convener for discussions, as a research
- 25 institution that can formulate empirical agenda and

For The Record, Inc.

```
indeed as an enforcement body with respect to matters
```

- 2 within our formal legal competence, to make this an area
- 3 in which we continue to return to basic issues overtime.
- 4 As part of that process, we welcome your
- 5 thoughts about what the empirical agenda might be, what
- 6 the appropriate format for consultations ought to be in
- 7 the future, and both by your direct participation and
- 8 through the providing of public comments, we do welcome
- 9 efforts to intensify and carry out that discussion over
- 10 time.
- I want to finish by thanking perhaps the most
- important ingredient of making this a successful
- process. The indispensable element of making this work
- 14 are the contributions of our panelists, and when you've
- 15 looked at the good results that I think we've achieved
- in the past, there's been a continuing theme about that.
- 17 Very capable people generously put in a great deal of
- 18 time to think through these issues and to bring those
- insights to bear in the process.
- I can't say how much we are grateful for your
- 21 willingness to commit your time to doing this, and I
- think throughout the day, certainly when I get the
- 23 chance to read the transcript, and it's quite fortunate
- that we do have a record that becomes available over
- 25 time, I know that I will see again, as a result of these

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 proceedings, exactly that kind of dedication of effort
```

- 2 and those kinds of insight.
- We are extremely grateful to you for committing
- 4 your time and effort to doing this and to giving us the
- 5 benefit, not just of theory, but to show us how theory
- 6 has met practice in a variety of different areas.
- 7 Last, let me thank two groups. First, I want to
- 8 give my thanks to an institution that helped us set down
- 9 this path in 2001-2002, and that's the Patent and
- 10 Trademark Office. When the Department of Justice and
- 11 the FTC and the PTO first formulated the hearings that
- 12 were set in motion in 2001 that led to the To Promote
- 13 Innovation report in 2003, it was the willingness in
- many ways of the Patent and Trademark Office to join us
- in that collaboration.
- I suppose if the PTO had approached us and said,
- 17 "We would like to have 20 or so days of hearings on the
- quality of antitrust enforcement," I might not have
- 19 regarded that as a friendly suggestion. I might have
- seen it, if I were narrow minded, which of course I'm
- 21 not, as a threat.
- Yet the PTO joined us in that effort, even
- 23 though in many ways it raised questions that were very
- 24 difficult for them, and the willingness to engage in
- 25 that discussion, not only to reach consensus about some

For The Record, Inc.

```
of the points, I regard as a singular example of sound
```

- 2 public administration, and we continue to realize the
- 3 benefits of that collaboration.
- I also thank my colleagues here at the FTC, and
- 5 let me simply mention the empresarios who made this
- 6 happen, the producers who made this happen: Erika
- 7 Meyers, Bill Adkinson, Armando Irizarry, Tom Mays, Joel
- 8 Schrag, Chris Bryan, and most of all Suzanne Michel, who
- 9 is here with us.
- 10 Fortunately, you know Suzanne's work quite well,
- and I'm quite confident that in the field of efforts to
- integrate knowledge in both of these fields, Suzanne is
- 13 unsurpassed.
- 14 A story I like to tell is an interview that took
- 15 place some years ago by a journalist who talked to the
- 16 curator of the Hermitage Museum, and the curator was
- 17 asked, "Does the Hermitage have the greatest collection
- 18 of art in the world?" The curator said, "That's a
- 19 difficult question, it's hard to answer, I'm not sure,
- 20 but I certainly can tell you one thing, it is not the
- 21 second."
- With respect to Suzanne's own efforts, that is
- 23 the effort to truly bridge these areas and bring a
- genuine, deep, sophisticated understanding of the two
- 25 fields together, Suzanne is certainly not the second.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              I welcome you again I look forward to a very
 2
      fruitful discussion, and indeed the first of many good
 3
      days to come in the years ahead. Thank you, Suzanne.
 4
              MS. MICHEL:
                           Thank you.
 5
              (Applause.)
 6
              MS. MICHEL: Thank you very much, Chairman
 7
      Kovacic. I will stop blushing in just a second. If I
      could call up our first set of panelists now, and
 8
 9
      we'll get started. Thank you.
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
```

For The Record, Inc.

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

- 1 PANEL 1: DEVELOPING BUSINESS MODELS.
- 2 MODERATORS:
- 3 SUZANNE MICHEL, FTC, Bureau of Competition
- 4 ERIKA MEYERS, FTC, Bureau of Competition
- 5 PANELISTS:
- 6 MALLUN YEN, Vice President, WW Intellectual Property,
- 7 Cisco Systems, Inc.
- 8 PETER N. DETKIN, Founder & Vice Chairman, Intellectual
- 9 Ventures, L.L.C.
- DANIEL P. MCCURDY, CEO, Allied Security Trust; Chairman,
- 11 PatentFreedom, LLC
- 12 RAYMOND MILLIEN, Founder, PCT Companies and CEO, PCT
- 13 Capital, LLC
- BRIAN KAHIN, Senior Fellow, Computer & Communications
- 15 Industry Association
- MS. MEYERS: Good morning. I'm Erika Meyers.
- 17 Thank you for coming to the FTC's first hearing on
- 18 the evolving IP marketplace. In our first panel we will
- 19 explore the emergence of new business models involving
- 20 the buying, selling and licensing of patents and the
- 21 implications these developing business models have on
- 22 patent valuation and licensing.
- We have a wonderful group of panelists with us
- 24 today who will discuss these significant changes. First
- up will be Ray Millien. Ray is the Founder and Chairman

For The Record, Inc.

```
of PCT Companies, a family of companies providing
```

- 2 intellectual property-focused legal, lobbying and
- 3 advisory service for the knowledge economy. Before that
- 4 he was General Counsel for Ocean Tomo, the country's
- 5 leading investment house focusing on IP assets, and he
- 6 has practiced law with well-respected firms.
- 7 Next will be Peter Detkin. Peter is Founder and
- 8 Vice Chairman of Intellectual Ventures. Before
- 9 Intellectual Ventures, Peter was Vice President and
- 10 Assistant General Counsel at Intel Corporation where he
- was responsible for managing the Intel patent and
- 12 licensing departments. He was also an intellectual
- 13 property partner at Wilson Sonsini.
- 14 Peter will be followed by Dan McCurdy. In
- August of 2008, Dan McCurdy was named CEO for Allied
- Security Trust where he is responsible, among other
- things, for patent acquisition. He's also Chairman of
- 18 PatentFreedom. Before this, Dan was Founder and Chief
- 19 Executive Officer of ThinkFire, and he has had
- 20 intellectual property experience with a number of large
- 21 corporations.
- 22 Mallun Yen will follow Dan. Mallun is Vice
- 23 President of Worldwide Intellectual Property at Cisco
- 24 Systems, the worldwide leader in networking that
- transforms how people connect, communicate and

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 collaborate. Mallun started at Cisco as the company's
```

- 2 second intellectual property attorney and went on to
- 3 build a group that now consists of over two dozen
- 4 professionals.
- 5 With the important job of closing the
- 6 presentations is Brian Kahin. Brian is Senior Fellow at
- 7 the Computer and Communications Industry Association,
- 8 and he's also a Research Investigator and Adjunct
- 9 Professor at the University of Michigan School of
- 10 Information. He's authored several papers and held
- 11 other academic and government positions relating to
- 12 intellectual property.
- 13 Suzanne Michel will be moderating, so without
- 14 any further ado.
- 15 MR. MILLIEN: Thank you. I quess I'm batting
- lead off today. Good morning. My name is Ray Millien.
- 17 I'm the CEO of PCT Capital and chairman of the PCT
- 18 Companies. I'm charged today with introducing the
- 19 topic of the evolving IP marketplace.
- Therefore, what I want to do is just put this in
- 21 perspective, both economically and historically about
- 22 how we got here. I know there's a lot of what I call
- 23 Wall Street Journal hype in terms of patent reform,
- P-LECs, non-practicing entities and all the other names
- 25 that are out there, and we're all talking about what's For The Record, Inc.

```
1 going to happen in the 111th Congress in the new Obama
```

- 2 Administration, where there are a good 40 to 50 jobs
- 3 that may impact IP policy. So without further ado,
- 4 let me just get into our presentation.
- 5 Economically, I guess I always like to start my
- 6 presentation by quoting Alan Greenspan, one Federal
- 7 Reserve chairman ago. He noticed back in 2003 that
- 8 our economy was really moving towards an intellectual
- 9 property economy and saying that the fraction of the
- 10 total output of our economy that essentially conceptual
- 11 rather than physical has been rising, and therefore the
- 12 rising importance and emphasis in asset valuation going
- from physical property to IP.
- 14 To put it in further historical perspective,
- 15 Alvin Toffler wrote an influential book called the Third
- Wave, and in that book, he said you could really divide
- 17 the world's history into three economic periods. The
- 18 first was the agricultural period, where basically from
- 19 8000 BC to 1800 AD, the measure of wealth was really
- 20 land. If you remember your social studies from
- 21 grade school, you realize that back in the day, if you
- didn't own land you couldn't vote, right, and in some
- 23 places not so far back in the day.
- Really starting around 1800 to 1950, in the
- 25 industrial age, where really the measure of wealth was

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 land, labor and capital. In other words, you needed
```

- 2 land to build factories. You needed labor to work in
- 3 those factories, and you needed capital to buy the
- 4 machines for those factories, and then Alvin noticed that
- 5 around 1950, really the measure of wealth is becoming
- 6 more capital and intellectual property, and we are now
- 7 in the third wave so to speak.
- 8 To present some further empirical data, Ned
- 9 Davis Research, following on some research that was done
- 10 earlier by Brookings Institute said: Look, if you look
- at the components of the S&P 500, and the S&P 500 are
- 12 the 500 largest publicly traded companies in the U.S --
- if you look at their value, their book value and
- 14 separate that by tangibles and intangibles, you will
- 15 notice in 1975, less than 20 percent of the value of the
- 16 companies on the S&P 500 were really attributable to
- intangibles.
- 18 If you look 30 years later, that value is almost
- 19 80 percent, and we know that IP is the largest component
- of intangibles, so therefore there's been what we call
- 21 sort of like an 80/20 inversion.
- Now, let's look at some interesting facts. Back
- 23 in 2005, the economists noted that as much as three
- quarters of the value of publicly traded companies in
- America comes from intangibles assets, really validating

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 the Ned Davis Research.
- 2 They also noted that for the first time since
- 3 the industrial revolution, fewer than 10 percent of
- 4 American workers are now employed in manufacturing, and
- 5 by 2008 that number is probably closer to 5 percent, so
- 6 we are becoming very much a white collar society, the
- 7 output of which are intangibles. That's how we're
- 8 measuring wealth these days, and that's how we're
- 9 measuring the values of our companies.
- 10 Global licensing revenue is greater than \$150
- 11 billion and growing 25 to 30 percent year. If you look
- 12 at the US IP settlements and judgments in 2006, they
- total over \$3.4 billion, and if you look at sort
- of the gold standard of measurement of IP revenue is
- 15 always IBM, you'll notice that they were at \$975 million
- in 2006, down from their previous high of \$1.5 billion,
- and if you look at sort of the flip side of a different
- business model where a large company doesn't do a cert,
- you will notice that Microsoft paid more than \$1.4
- 20 billion in IP royalties in 2003.
- 21 So I talked about the historical perspective,
- 22 the economic perspective. Now, I have this little chart
- 23 here that I would like to go through just to talk about
- 24 the history of the IP business models in the
- 25 evolving IP marketplace.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              Going from left to right, we're going from
 2
      historical to future, and then from top to bottom on the
 3
      Y axes there, I'm going from quote, unquote, low quality
 4
      transactions, highly frictional transactions, to more
 5
      high quality transactions, less frictional transactions.
 6
              Historically, IP was really a feudal system.
 7
      you look back 30 years ago, the IP game was really
      dominated by the IBMs and the GEs of the world and their
 8
 9
      patent lawyers. You had a very few companies that owned
10
      most of the patents, and that was really the IP game,
      and then people just basically did a lot of defensive
11
12
      cross-licensing. Then companies like IBM got into
13
      royalty-based industry licensing and then into expansion
14
      licensing, licensing companies outside of your core
15
      business areas.
16
              In present, now we have companies doing IP based
17
      M&A where they're buying a company, not because of its
      revenue, but because of its IP position. You have
18
19
      patent licensing and enforcement companies, P-LECs, or
20
      what some people refer to as NPEs, non-practicing
21
      entities, or some people refer to as patent trolls.
22
      Those are sprouting up.
23
              And now you have people doing patent pools,
24
      whether it be defensive or offensive. With Ocean Tomo
25
      we launched public IP auctions a few years ago, and now
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 there are a lot of web portals popping up which are more
```

- 2 like the business to business models like yet2.com,
- 3 Tynax, Deans List, Patent/Bid-Ask, so on and so forth.
- In the future, you're really going to see an IP
- 5 for the masses, where IP is treated more like a
- 6 commodity, like pork belly futures and oil and so on and
- 7 so forth, and right now, you have people developing IP-
- 8 based hedge funds, where they're picking stocks based on
- 9 the companies's IP portfolio, and we have IP indexes
- 10 like the Patent Board's Wall Street Index or the Ocean
- 11 Tomo 300.
- 12 You are going to see in the future urban IP
- zones. You've heard of the empowerment zones. The next
- 14 wave is going to be urban IP zones, like American
- 15 Express is pioneering in Upper Manhattan to develop the
- 16 economic areas in Harlem.
- 17 Then you're going to see traded exchanges for
- 18 license rights, like the IP Exchange in Chicago that
- 19 people are developing now, sort of the NASDAQ and New
- 20 York Stock Exchange for intellectual property, and
- that's sort of where we're headed.
- There is still a problem with IP today. That
- 23 is, the IP assets are not very liquid, and historically IP
- sellers haven't been really able to locate IP buyers
- readily and easily. These days, if you own a hundred

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 shares of Citibank, it is easy to sell these shares, you
```

- 2 just call your broker, but if you own a hundred patents,
- 3 where do you go to sell those? That's a little more
- 4 difficult transaction, obviously.
- 5 Traditionally, IP transactions have always been
- 6 characterized by difficult to acquire identification,
- 7 long periods of negotiation, and as all the lawyers in
- 8 the room, know, endless due diligence.
- 9 So what are the IP business models? So we've
- 10 surveyed the IP business models and really found there
- are 17 business models out there, and there are probably
- more evolving as we speak. But, these 17 business models
- are different and apart from an operating company, who
- 14 is doing R&D, producing IP, and getting markets and
- 15 products to the marketplace, and this is different than
- 16 the law firms.
- So we're talking about the models other than the
- 18 traditional law firm model and the other traditional
- operating company model, and those models include the
- 20 P-LECs that we referred to earlier, people like Acacia
- 21 Research, Fergason and Lemelson; in other words, people
- 22 who are non-practicing entities that assert the IP.
- Then you have institutional IP aggregators.
- 24 Those are people who are really following more of a
- 25 private equity model where they're going out and raising

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 capital, going out and acquiring IP and employing
```

- 2 different strategies to monetize that, whether it be
- 3 arbitrage or what have you.
- 4 Then you have your IP technology development
- 5 type companies like AmberWave, QualComm and Rambus.
- 6 Those are companies, traditional-like companies but who
- 7 may develop IP, who spend a lot of money on R&D but may
- 8 not actually get the actual product or service to the
- 9 consumer but rather licenses it to another company
- 10 who then produces the product or service.
- 11 Then you have your licensing agents, those
- 12 people who represent companies who are looking for
- 13 licensees.
- 14 Then you have your litigation, finance or
- 15 investment firms. These are firms that may loan money
- or they may take investment, whether it be equity
- investment or debt investment, into a company who then
- 18 may use those funds to go out on assert or use those
- 19 funds to develop the IP or use those funds to actually
- 20 go into business.
- 21 Then you have your IP brokers, who are very much
- 22 like your IP licensing agents, but in those cases, the
- 23 brokers are more; in other words, licensing agents sort
- of go along with the company. They try to find
- licensees. They manage the licensees. They implement

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 strategy. The brokers are pretty much the people who
```

- 2 are saying, look, you want to sell your patents, let me
- 3 broker the deal, I keep a percent, I'll move on.
- Then you have IP-based M&A advisory. Those are
- 5 people who are helping companies locate IP, doing some more
- 6 investment banking type representations but looking for
- 7 companies to compliment their client's IP portfolios.
- 8 Then you have your IP auction houses that are
- 9 trying to do what Christie's and Sotheby's did for the
- 10 art market; in other words, make it more liquid by
- 11 holding either live or online IP auctions.
- 12 Then you have your online IP technology
- exchanges; in other words, more of a B-to-B business
- 14 model like back in the dot.com heyday, people who are
- 15 letting people post their IP, sort of becoming the
- 16 credulous of IP, so to speak.
- You move on to people. You have people who are
- 18 doing IP-backed lending. In other words, there are people
- who are loaning companies money in the range of anywhere
- from half a million to two million dollars, and basically the
- 21 collateral for those loans are not the Aeron Chairs and
- the Dell Computers, but the actual IP assets of those
- 23 companies who are typically start ups or post-round A
- 24 companies.
- Then you have your royalty stream securitization

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 firms, who are probably not doing much business in light
- of the mortgage-backed securities meltdown, but in
- 3 essence, those companies are those who specialize in
- 4 helping companies issue IP-backed mortgage securities.
- 5 Many of you may remember the Dunkin' Donuts deal or the
- 6 Yale University deal where essentially a company issues
- 7 bonds, and those bonds are backed by the royalty income of
- 8 its existing IP portfolio.
- 9 Then you have patent analytic software
- 10 and services. These are the folks who are not really
- doing deals, not really facilitating deals, but they're
- 12 providing the background research to do the deals, your
- 13 PatentRatings.com or your Patent Cafes. They're helping
- 14 people do due diligence. They're helping score patents.
- 15 They're helping trying to -- if you have a portfolio of
- 4,000 patents and you want to know, which of those
- 17 patents should I assert first, those are the companies
- that are doing the background analytics.
- Then you have companies that follow all the
- 20 business models that I talked about earlier, but focus
- in on the university market, and that's not a bad market
- 22 to focus on because universities in 2006 did over 4,000
- 23 patent licenses, and if you look at the combined
- research budget of universities, you're talking in the
- 25 tens of billions of dollars.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Then in the 14th business model you have IP
```

- 2 transaction exchanges, and those are what I mentioned
- 3 earlier going to the future, people trying to be the
- 4 NASDAQ and New York Stock Exchange of IP.
- 5 The 15th business model are defensive patent
- 6 pools, funds and alliances. These are companies that
- 7 really function like the private equity model, and I
- 8 won't steal Dan's thunder there, so I'll go quickly
- 9 through this, but in essence those are companies that
- 10 are raising capital and pooling patents either for
- 11 offensive or defensive purpose.
- Then you have companies that focus on technology
- and IP spin-out financing. In other words, those are
- 14 companies that are helping Fortune 500 companies
- 15 that have developed some intellectual property, but that
- 16 IP is outside of their core areas, so therefore they
- 17 provide financing to spin that IP out into start-ups or
- 18 smaller companies who may take that IP and develop
- 19 actual consumer based products and services.
- Last, but not least, we have patent based public
- 21 stock indexes, like the Ocean Tomo Indexes or Indices,
- and the Patent Board's Wall Street Journal scorecard,
- and again, those are companies that are facilitating
- 24 trading and hedge funds that are focused on IP based
- 25 quant models.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 That's a summary of the business models in the
```

- 2 evolving IP marketplace, and with that I'll turn it over
- 3 to my fellow panelists.
- 4 MS. MICHEL: Thank you very much, Ray, and let
- 5 me comment: Ray has done a great job of packing a lot
- of information into a small time and exactly the
- 7 information we needed to lead off this panel. We do
- 8 plan to post all the slides on the web site for the
- 9 conference, so that if you didn't catch it all, you can
- 10 get it there.
- 11 We'll turn next to Peter Detkin.
- MR. MILLIEN: It's a good thing I'm from
- 13 Brooklyn. I did that in a New York minute.
- MR. DETKIN: It's been a while since I left New
- 15 York, so I don't think I can match Ray's speed, but
- we'll see what we can do.
- 17 I would like to thank the Commission, Chairman
- 18 Kovacic, Suzanne and Erika and everybody at the
- 19 Commission for hosting this panel and for bringing us
- 20 together to discuss this important topic.
- There are a wide range of views, a lot of
- 22 strongly held and sincerely held positions on various
- 23 issues that surround this evolving marketplace. With
- that in mind and with full knowledge of the silver
- 25 tongue oration that is to follow and the held views of

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 my fellow panelists, I want to see if I can reserve some
```

- 2 time for rebuttal here.
- 3 So you heard from Ray about the market and what
- 4 is evolving out there. I'm going to talk a little bit
- 5 about why and Intellectual Ventures' place in that
- 6 market, so we're going to dive a little bit deeper on
- 7 one of the models, and I'll touch on some others.
- 8 Why does the market exist? Like any market, it
- 9 exists because there's a demand for it. The current
- 10 market undervalues invention and discourages innovation.
- I'll get a little more into that, but the simple fact is
- 12 the objective facts are that markets don't pop up for no
- 13 reason. They exist because there's a demand for it.
- 14 Congress is addressing some of it, but as often
- 15 happens in capitalist societies, the free market is
- addressing it as well, and I think there's some very
- interesting questions for the FTC to look at.
- 18 Let's never forget, I mean, I started this
- 19 presentation off, and I don't know if you caught my
- 20 title slide, according to the Constitution, the point of
- 21 the patent system is to promote the progress of science,
- 22 and so the key question I think we need to look at is:
- 23 Are inventors and innovations better off with the new
- free market models emerging and evolving or not? Let's
- 25 not focus on individual competitors. That's not what

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 antitrust law is about. That's not what patent law is
```

- 2 about. Let's focus on invention.
- What are the sources of invention? Quickly,
- 4 this comes from an SBA report. 60 percent of the
- 5 patents granted are actually so called small inventors,
- 6 which is a defined term in the Patent Office
- 7 regulations. 40 percent are large corporations.
- 8 Of course, the patent revenues -- I have to be
- 9 honest, I saw Ray's number. I'm a little distrustful of
- 10 the \$150 billion number that he put up. I've seen
- 11 that reported before. However, he also noted that IBM
- was roughly a billion, and a number that we all know
- 13 about. I find it hard to believe that if IBM was at a
- 14 billion, the entire market is 150 billion.
- 15 So another call, another challenge to the FTC is
- this discussion needs data. This argument desperately,
- desperately needs data. There's a lot of anecdotes out
- 18 there. I remember when this discussion first started
- 19 four years ago. Everybody was all up in arms about the
- 20 Dell injunction case, because injunctions was the big
- 21 issue. In the eBay case, the Supreme Court did what the
- 22 courts do, which they tweak the law as we all know, and
- 23 dealt with the injunction issue.
- But everybody was talking about how Dell had to
- 25 stop shipping the laptop because of a patent on a modem

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 that was on a small piece of a modem and meant the
```

- 2 laptop got shut down. It turned out the case didn't
- 3 exist. It was urban myth. There are a lot of urban
- 4 myths out there. We need data.
- 5 Looking at the technology marketplace from the
- 6 user view, that is the large corporate view, the large
- 7 corporations, Moore's law is almost -- it's an economic
- 8 law, but it's as immutable as the law of gravity in the
- 9 semiconductor industry. It also applies in all other
- 10 industries. There's a lot of integration going on.
- There's a lot of inventions that are being used
- by companies that didn't come from those companies. I
- mean, I'll have to pick on Mallun for a second because
- she's sitting here, but I'm sure Mallun will tell you
- 15 that Cisco does not have all the patents on routers and
- 16 networks.
- 17 They have a large percentage. It's a very
- innovative company, but they don't have them all. I
- 19 know at Intel we didn't have all the patents on
- semiconductors, a lot of other good companies out there
- 21 did.
- 22 So Intel needed access to invention rights, and
- that's what patents are. They're dry pieces of paper.
- 24 They represent invention rights. Just like we don't
- 25 talk about deed law, we talk about land. Patents

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 represent inventions, and Intel needed access to the
```

- 2 inventions of others, and they needed to share IP within
- 3 an ecosystem, and of course they needed to avoid
- 4 financial pitfalls. They want to avoid royalty
- 5 stack-ups.
- From the inventors' standpoint, they just want to
- 7 be paid. Inventors want to invent. They don't want to
- 8 spend years -- you heard Ray talk about, and I'll talk
- 9 about it a little bit more, the difficulties of being
- 10 paid. It's hard for somebody to invent, and then if
- 11 they invent something cool and new and they make a
- 12 router go 10 percent faster, they're not going to start
- a company that's going to go compete with Cisco, they
- 14 would be nuts, but they would like to license it to
- 15 Cisco.
- Well, they can knock on Mallun's door and have a
- 17 nice discussion with Mallun. I sorry, I don't mean to
- 18 pick on Mallun. I'll pick on Doug at Palm. They can knock
- on Doug's or Mallun's door and start the licensing
- 20 negotiation which here's another immutable law. It's
- 21 another 18 to 24 months. It's interesting, 18 to 24
- 22 months, Moore's law, that's law of licensing. We'll
- 23 call it Detkin's law.
- 24 18 to 24 months in licensing negotiations, I'll
- guarantee you, but you know what? During that time he's

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 not inventing, and that's what he wants to do. That's
- from the small inventor's standpoint, and this is
- 3 supposed to be an avatar of a friend of mine, who has a
- 4 patent by the way, and I got it for him. The first
- 5 patent I wrote in 20 years, and he got what he paid for
- 6 it. I did it for free.
- 7 From a corporate perceptive, R&D budgets are
- 8 under pressure. Patent portfolios are underutilized.
- 9 People invent things that they don't use. They have the
- 10 rights to them. They have a right -- the shareholders
- 11 have a right to see a return on those inventions, but
- 12 it's something the corporation is not currently using,
- and of course patent enforcement is not for the faint of
- 14 heart or small of pocketbook.
- 15 What that leads is kind of a big guy versus
- little guy syndrome. Big companies frankly benefit from
- 17 a disorganized market. They take a viewpoint that
- 18 whenever you go to one of the patent law focused
- 19 conferences, not one that's like this, you go to patent
- law focused conference and there's always a panel on how
- 21 to avoid paying? What are the latest techniques? What
- 22 are the new reexamination techniques for keeping those
- 23 patents in the Patent Office forever? What are the
- 24 techniques for -- who are the best courts to go to? Who
- are the best courts not to go to?

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 As I said, Detkin's law, 18 to 24 months of license
```

- 2 negotiations, litigation of at least two to seven years, and
- 3 of course, if you don't like the law, try to get it
- 4 changed.
- 5 Small inventors have few options. Ray talked
- 6 about this eloquently, but there is no market to get the
- 7 inventions for that guy who made the router go 10
- 8 percent faster. He's got no efficient way for getting
- 9 that license to Cisco. He's got a hard choice. Does he
- 10 keep inventing or does he go try to negotiate with Cisco
- or Palm or whoever?
- 12 That leads, by the way, to a swing from the
- 13 fences mentality. If I'm going to litigate, I'm going
- 14 to ask for a lot of money because I have got no choice.
- 15 It's a two to seven year long slog that leads to the
- so-called troll syndrome.
- 17 This was all analyzed by a professor, I hope I
- don't mispronounce his name, Elhauge, a professor at
- 19 Harvard Law School who wrote a very influential paper,
- 20 copies will be available in the back, and he examined
- 21 using language that only economists can love with lots
- 22 and lots of formulas, but his conclusion was that the
- 23 current system of damages leads non-inventors to
- 24 appropriate patents for less than their value, thereby
- 25 discouraging investment in invention.

For The Record, Inc.

```
This was a direct response to the Shapiro-Lemley
```

- 2 paper that was published I think a year or two ago, and
- 3 it's a really very interesting article. I commend it to
- 4 everyone studying in this field.
- 5 I understand Professor Cotter has written a
- 6 reply or a reply of sorts that he'll be discussing this
- 7 afternoon. I haven't had a chance to read Professor
- 8 Cotter's reply. He just promised to send it to me. The
- 9 point is, clearly there's room for debate on this issue.
- 10 I'm sure that Professor Lemley disagrees with
- 11 Professor Elhauge's conclusions. I believe Professor
- 12 Cotter does as well. Reasonable minds can differ.
- 13 There is some serious debate to go on here, and I don't
- think anybody would call any of these professors
- 15 unreasonable minds.
- How do we restore balance, which is what we're
- 17 all here to discuss? Well, there is a lot of lobbying
- 18 going on as we all know. I mean, this is not a secret
- 19 to anybody in this room. Some of the folks, staffers
- from the office came here for a break from the lobby,
- 21 and I see them in the audience.
- 22 Patent law changes are under review, and talk
- about a timely bullet, the *Tafas* case is being argued I
- 24 believe, even as we speak. Judge Rader, by the way, is
- leading the panel, if anybody's curious. There's

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 significant legislative reform under discussion.
```

- Interesting, the FTC, of course, published its
- 3 report in 2003, which everybody now holds up and says,
- 4 This proves the need for reform, but if you look at the
- 5 reforms that are proposed in the FTC report, it has no
- 6 bearing whatsoever on reforms that are in the current
- 7 drafts of the legislation, so I would urge folks before
- 8 they use that as a basis for reform to actually read the
- 9 FTC report.
- There's a lot of claims that are out of control,
- filings and damages awards. Again we need data because
- the fact is litigations are down or flat in the last
- 13 several years. Dan McCurdy's own web site has year to
- date as of 2008 data. It shows that NPE litigation is
- only 4.5 percent of overall 2008 patent suits. There's
- 16 no evidence of out-sized settlement or damage awards.
- 17 There's been no proof the Georgia Pacific factors don't
- 18 actually work. Of course the Supreme Court and the
- 19 courts generally are becoming more active in IP. I don't
- 20 need to belabor that point. I believe this audience is
- 21 well familiar.
- So what do we need to do going forward? We need
- 23 to continue to remember that patents protect ideas, not
- 24 products. We need to focus patent law on idea
- protection, not on what's right for the product

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 manufacturer. We need to provide incentives to
```

- 2 inventors. We don't want to facilitate market share
- 3 protectionism and continue to activate the free market
- 4 forces that Ray so eloquently spoke of and so quickly.
- 5 Talking a little deeper about inventions and
- 6 developing asset class, traditional asset classes, you
- 7 have venture capital, which is capital stimulating
- 8 creation. There's been a 77 X growth since 1980. VC-
- 9 backed companies -- this is a study as of last year so
- 10 the numbers may be a little out of date, but you get the
- idea. It's a very large percentage of the U.S. GDP.
- 12 Private equity, that's an effort to unlock a
- potential of existing assets. You provide the capital.
- 14 You provide the expertise. It's at a huge growth. Now,
- 15 this number is definitely old because God knows what
- this number is in light of recent events, but still,
- it's a very large market.
- 18 Invention capital is somewhere in between
- investing in invention. It's a combination of both
- 20 investing in new assets and investing in existing assets
- 21 and bringing them to their full potential.
- These are some of the models out there. I'm not
- 23 going to talk about these at all because Ray covered it
- 24 already. Professor Elhauge had a very interesting
- conclusion, and this should be common sense to everybody

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 in the room. Non-competitors, non-practicing entities
```

- 2 actually have less incentive to overcharge for IP as
- 3 compared for competitors because there's no competitive
- 4 so-called tax or rent that they'll seek to include.
- 5 Again I encourage people to look at that article.
- Who is Intellectual Ventures? Well, we build,
- 7 buy and partner. I have 30 seconds to get through this,
- 8 and I will.
- 9 MS. MICHEL: We have time.
- 10 MR. DETKIN: We do all three.
- 11 We build our own inventions. We have a state of the art
- 12 laboratory. We have many engineers on staff who are
- devoted to nothing but inventions. We buy
- 14 inventions from others. Folks come to us and say, I
- have invented something cool, I want to go back to
- inventing, will you help me monetize this. We have
- 17 capital for that.
- We partner with others. We work with research
- 19 institutions around the world. Our research model looks
- 20 remarkably like Cisco's, like Palm's, like HP's, like
- 21 Intel's. We all build, buy and partner. The difference
- is we don't make product out of it. We're not
- 23 embarrassed by that. We're not apologizing for that
- 24 fact.
- We don't think we have distribution expertise.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 We don't have manufacturing expertise. We don't have
```

- 2 marketing expertise. We want to let a thousand flowers
- 3 bloom. We non-exclusively license and let our licensees
- 4 do that heavy lifting.
- We have about \$5 billion under
- 6 management, and let me correct a misconception that's
- 7 out there. That does not mean we spent \$5 billion.
- 8 I've read some blogs where people said, Oh, my
- 9 God, they've spent \$5 billion, there's a
- 10 bubble, I can't believe that, they'll never get a
- 11 return. We haven't spent \$5 billion. We have \$5
- 12 billion under management, big difference.
- Of the amount that we have invested, 20 percent
- 14 has gone to individual investors, by the way, and the
- 15 rest has gone to corporations to reimburse them for
- 16 their -- to help them monetize their inventions, but we
- are helping both the small inventor and the
- 18 corporations, and we've generated over \$1 billion
- in license revenue already, and yes, we've done that all
- 20 without any litigation.
- We see about 30,000 assets per year, and we
- currently own about 20,000 plus assets. Assets are both
- 23 patents, patent applications and foreign assets as well,
- and we've filed thousands ourselves.
- We believe we are making it easier for buyers

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 and users to engage. From a patentholder perspective,
```

- 2 they receive fair compensation. That person will figure
- 3 out a way to make that router go 10 percent faster. He
- 4 gets his money. He gets to go back and invent, which is
- 5 what he wants to do. We think it's a market alternative
- 6 to him being forced to go to litigation.
- 7 From the user perspective, it enables them to
- 8 deal with us. I mean, if we were to license all 20,000
- 9 assets to a particular company, they can either deal
- 10 with us or they can deal with 20,000 individual rights
- 11 holders. That's the so called gridlock economy, and
- that's what we think we're solving, because they don't
- 13 need to go deal with all the individual right holders.
- 14 They can just deal with us.
- 15 I'm almost finished. You don't have to put up
- 16 the stop sign.
- 17 So the real question for the FTC is: Are
- investors better off than they were five years ago? I
- 19 believe the answer is yes, and notwithstanding that stop
- 20 sign, I still think I've reserved some time for
- 21 rebuttal. Remember, patents protect ideas, not product.
- Thank you very much.
- 23 MS. MICHEL: We'll now turn to Dan McCurdy, and
- 24 there will absolutely be -- following all our panel
- presentations, we'll be having a discussion among our

For The Record, Inc.

```
panelists which I'm looking forward to. Dan?
```

- 2 Dan, we started a little early so a couple extra
- 3 minutes is absolutely fine.
- 4 MR. DETKIN: Sure, you tell him that.
- 5 MS. MICHEL: Sorry, Peter.
- 6 MR. MCCURDY: Thank you very much. Good
- 7 morning. I'm Dan McCurdy. I'm CEO of Allied Security
- 8 Trust and chairman of PatentFreedom, and, Peter, thank
- 9 you very much for your comments. Where do I begin?
- I appreciate the opportunity to appear before
- 11 you today. My remarks are taken from a larger paper I
- 12 have just completed for the Center For American
- 13 Progress, which we published for January the 12th, and
- 14 which will be discussed at a panel on patent reform
- 15 which I will moderate on that date being sponsored by
- 16 CAP.
- 17 The United States is, of course, in the midst of
- 18 a financial crisis. That's no surprise. Innovation
- 19 will be critical to restore the long-term economic
- 20 health and prosperity of our country. Innovation, as a
- 21 key to prosperity, has long roots in the United States.
- The basis for the patent system was not the
- 23 protection of individual rights to inventions per se,
- 24 but rather the promotion of economic development in a
- 25 young and ambitious country. Patents would facilitate

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 investment and innovation by helping to ensure that the
```

- 2 patented products or services that were the fruits of
- 3 that innovation could not be copied by others, thereby
- 4 undermining a return on the investment that made it
- 5 possible.
- In recent years, much in the practice of
- 7 intellectual property management has changed in ways
- 8 that are inconsistent with the public policy objectives
- 9 that were the foundation of the patent system. Left
- 10 unchecked, some of these new approaches threaten to
- 11 undermine the patent system and our prospects for
- 12 renewed economic growth.
- By far, the most significant and destabilizing
- 14 change in the patent environment since 2003 has been the
- 15 dramatic increase in the growth, financing and patent
- 16 acquisitions of non-practicing entities, sometimes
- 17 called patent trolls, a phrase, of course, coined by my
- 18 friend Peter Detkin.
- 19 NPEs derive or plan to derive all our most of
- 20 the revenue from the enforcement of patents. They are,
- 21 therefore, distinguishable from major research
- institutions, universities operating companies which
- 23 respectfully derive their revenue from funded research,
- tuition grants and the sale of products and services.
- Some NPEs raise large funds from which to

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 purchase the patents they seek to enforce building these
```

- 2 purchased portfolios around already highly successful
- 3 products. They then use these funds to enable, through
- 4 direct or veiled threats of infringement, their pursuit
- of royalties as a tax on these successful products. To
- 6 be clear, they are not protecting revenues derived from
- 7 their own products but rather seeking a toll from
- 8 successful product companies.
- 9 It is my prediction that because patent
- 10 licensing is inherently selling a product that no one
- wants, litigation will be required to achieve a level
- routine investors and NPEs expect. From October 1, 1994
- through September 30, 2002, 527 patent lawsuits were
- filed by or against 219 NPEs currently identified and
- 15 tracked by PatentFreedom. This represented 2.7 percent
- of patent lawsuits filed in the United States during
- 17 that eight year period.
- From October 1, 2003 through December 30, 2007,
- there were 1,210 lawsuits filed by or against these
- 20 entities, representing approximately 8.4 percent of all
- 21 patent lawsuits filed in that period, which now exceeds
- 22 10 percent in both 2006 and 2007.
- The number of unique operating companies sued
- for patent infringement by an NPE grew from 43 in 1996
- 25 to 1,260 in 2007. The number of litigations by NPEs

For The Record, Inc.

```
against operating companies grew from 17 in 1995 to 343
```

- 2 year to date 2008. With patent litigations averaging \$5
- 3 million in cost to each the plaintiff and the defendant,
- 4 the loser in this process will be operating companies,
- 5 consumers, competition, since many smaller companies
- 6 could be driven out of business by expenses of these
- 7 magnitude, and an overburdened court system.
- 8 Today the 219 NPEs currently tracked by
- 9 PatentFreedom combined have more than 800 subsidiaries,
- 10 likely at least 1,500, of all Intellectual Ventures
- 11 subsidiaries that are known, and more than 12,500 active
- 12 and U.S. patents in their holdings. In all likelihood,
- these numbers dramatically understate the magnitude of
- 14 the problem.
- 15 Intellectual Ventures is unique by virtue of its
- 16 capital structure, its collection of signatory operating
- 17 companies, its public relations capabilities, its
- 18 leadership and its patent portfolio. Beyond
- 19 Intellectual Ventures, the remaining 218 NPEs currently
- identified and tracked by PatentFreedom have varied
- 21 backgrounds.
- 22 Some like Acacia Technologies, Alliacense and
- 23 Rembrandt Technologies are primarily patent enforcement
- 24 entities that are highly selective in their purchases.
- Other NPEs such as First Technology, Rival Star, Cygnus

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Telecommunications Technology LLC, Freedom Wireless,
```

- 2 Millenium LP and Rates Technology, primarily or
- 3 exclusively license patents created by their employees
- 4 and/or owners as their primary source of revenue.
- 5 A third category involves individuals enforcing
- 6 their own patents, but who generally do not practice
- 7 their inventions in their own products or services.
- 8 Because these entities and individuals do not make or
- 9 sell products, there is some question as to how their
- 10 enforcement activities contribute to the first principle
- 11 underlying the creation of the patent system, to
- 12 encourage economic growth.
- 13 The creation of an idea is frequently the least
- 14 costly and least time consuming aspect of product
- 15 success. Development budgets vastly exceed research
- budgets in research and development intensive companies.
- Much more time and substantially more investment is
- 18 required to commercialize a product or service embodying
- an invention than to create the invention in the first
- 20 place.
- 21 For example, when I was director of business
- development for IBM Research, the global development
- 23 budget exceeded the global research budget by about 20
- 24 times. Even this were not the case, the tremendous
- financial and tactical advantages NPEs have over their

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 operating company targets are huge. When one operating
```

- 2 company asserts patents against, both have the
- 3 opportunity to reduce or eliminate the assertion by
- 4 counter asserting patents of their own against key
- 5 products of the aggressor.
- 6 Injunctions on key products are also a
- 7 possibility. This has a stabilizing impact by
- 8 discouraging frivolous or speculative assertions. These
- 9 tools are not available to an operating company when
- 10 confronted with patent assertion from an NPE.
- 11 This fact was recognized by Mr. Detkin in the
- 12 last Federal Trade Commission hearings when he stated:
- "These guys have no threat of counterclaims. It's the
- 14 ultimate asymmetry of risk, and even better, they demand
- an injunction, which boggles my mind."
- In fact, an NPE is actually rewarded with these
- immunities as a result of choosing not to pursue
- 18 progress or services using their invention or failing to
- 19 successfully produce and sell such products and
- 20 services. This can actually serve to diminish
- 21 competition and increase prices to consumers by
- rewarding entities not to put products and services in
- 23 the market but rather tax those that do so.
- Some NPEs argue that their presence provides
- 25 needed liquidity to inventors that may otherwise never

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 obtain any return on their investment, spurring those
```

- 2 inventors to further innovation. It is hard to credit
- 3 that argument when most NPEs offer such trivial rewards
- 4 to the inventing seller of a patent.
- 5 NPEs with hundreds of millions or billions of
- 6 dollars in capital pay inventors a small fraction of the
- 7 money they seek to obtain in subsequent enforcement
- 8 activities. It's hard to imagine that the prospect of
- 9 netting so small an amount will on its own stimulate
- 10 further innovation.
- In fact, NPEs could alter their behavior if they
- truly believed that their objective was to be an
- advocate and defender of the small inventor. They
- 14 could, one, attempt to enforce only those patents that
- 15 they could demonstrate were clearly valid and infringed,
- 16 fully applying a Rule 11 standard.
- 17 Two, they could avoid predatory massing of
- 18 patents through acquisition that is intended to
- overwhelm a potential licensee. Three, they could
- 20 practice full disclosure and transparency in their
- 21 funding, patent holdings and practices, and, four, they
- 22 could commit to the return of the majority of royalties
- 23 to the origin investor/inventor that created the
- 24 technology.
- Though they would still remain a dangerous

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 threat with significant advantages over operating
```

- 2 companies, these changes would help level the playing
- 3 field.
- In summary, NPEs that amass fortunes by using
- 5 purchased patents to tax those that commercialize
- 6 innovation raise costs to consumers and stifle
- 7 innovation. These effects hardly promote the public
- 8 policy on which the patent system was created, but for
- 9 the government's grant of a patent, the sole means of
- 10 exploiting an invention is to put it in a product and
- 11 offer it for sale.
- 12 Fostering the commercialization that spurs
- economic growth must certainly be at least as important
- 14 as fostering innovation. NPE's damage invention and
- 15 commercialization by exploiting their unfair advantage
- in the market. They increase barriers to entry for new
- firms that might otherwise lower prices through
- 18 competition and they threaten the viability of existing
- 19 firms that could increase competition and lower prices.
- Thank you very much.
- MS. MICHEL: Thank you, Dan. Now we'll here
- from Mallun Yen from Cisco.
- MS. YEN: Thank you, Suzanne. Thank you, Erika.
- I appreciate the opportunity to participate in today's
- 25 hearings, and I want to thank the FTC for its leadership

For The Record, Inc.

```
in focusing attention on the need to make our patent
```

- 2 system more effective.
- 3 Cisco has a key interest in innovation and in
- 4 the important incentive the patent system provides. Our
- 5 inventions are at the center of the Internet's role as
- 6 the ubiquitous worldwide communication medium. Cisco
- 7 invests more than \$5 billion annually in R&D. We
- 8 have more than 5,000 issued U.S. patents, and more than
- 9 5,000 more pending.
- 10 Our patent portfolio is consistently ranked
- 11 number 1 in the telecommunications sector by the Patent
- 12 Board, and we innovate both through internal R&D as well
- as by acquiring companies, 130 by my last count, most of
- 14 which are start ups that compliment and enhance our
- business as well as our internal innovation.
- So we follow changes in the intellectual
- 17 property marketplace very closely, and we're very
- 18 concerned about the recent developments. Increasingly,
- 19 activity in the marketplace is driven not by increased
- 20 innovation but by efforts to exploit imbalances in a
- 21 patent system that overvalues patents, particularly weak
- ones, and thereby actually suppresses marketplace
- 23 innovation.
- Much of today's patent market is based on the
- buying of patents in order to profit by compelling a

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 royalty payment from successful product companies that
```

- 2 have actually commercialized their innovations. An
- 3 increasingly common approach we've seen is to accumulate
- 4 new patents from each target with which the plaintiff
- 5 settles, which then, in turn, get immediately asserted
- 6 against another company, which fuels the cycle even
- 7 further. The consequences for innovation are
- 8 potentially just as dire as the injury we've seen to our
- 9 financial system. Patent laws created to promote
- 10 innovations are being used to drain funds from
- innovators, harming our economy.
- So in preparation for these hearings, I reviewed
- the FTC's 2003 report which recognized the potential
- 14 harm to innovation from a surge in licensing demands.
- 15 What the FTC wrote in warning about the proliferation of
- 16 patents, this was five years ago, is: "Innovators and
- manufacturers may have to choose between the risk of
- 18 being sued for patent infringement, after they sink
- 19 costs into invention or production, or dropping
- 20 innovative or productive efforts all together. Either
- 21 option can injure economic welfare."
- So this is precisely what has become a reality
- 23 today, and a lot has happened since the report issued in
- 24 2003. As we have heard, we've seen an almost irrational
- 25 exuberance in business models that attempt to make money

For The Record, Inc.

1 from patents, and these models largely developed in the

- 2 last five years.
- 3 Cisco's history in patent infringement actions
- 4 as a defendant demonstrates this trend. In 1998, Cisco
- 5 received its first patent infringement lawsuit, and the
- 6 cases that followed in the next couple of years were
- 7 brought entirely by other competitive operating
- 8 companies that built products and services and developed
- 9 their inventions in-house.
- 10 So what you can see in this chart is a dramatic
- 11 rise in the volume of cases brought directly or
- 12 indirectly against Cisco in the past five years,
- including the quadrupling in the past five years, and by
- the way, none of the cases filed in the past five years
- 15 involved a competitor, and virtually all of these cases
- 16 have been with non-practicing entities.
- In many of these cases the plaintiffs are not
- the original assignees or the inventors of the patents.
- 19 Instead they purchase the patent in the marketplace for
- 20 the sole purpose of litigation or the threat of
- 21 litigation and never intended to make or sell any
- 22 products or services.
- So in addition to these lawsuits, we receive
- 24 many demand letters as well as an increasing number of
- offers inviting Cisco to purchase patents. These

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 requests come at a rate of five to ten per week, and we
```

- 2 look at every one of them, including the friendly
- 3 request to buy patents rather than license, and in
- 4 several of the cases where we've declined to buy the
- 5 patents, the patent holder has sued us very shortly
- 6 thereafter, and we have other cases where the patent
- 7 holder then sells the patent to a third-party who also
- 8 then very shortly thereafter sues us.
- 9 So some of these plaintiffs seek an amount that
- 10 is just under the cost of litigation, knowing that with
- 11 such uncertainty in the system, a company must seriously
- 12 consider resolution under such terms, and other
- patent holders make huge demands based on a system that
- does allow for jackpot type victories.
- 15 Indeed, we've had demands as high as \$8.8 billion,
- and, in fact, there was actually a meeting where
- 17 a plaintiff literally demanded, I quote, a gazillion
- 18 dollars, not kidding. We almost pulled out our
- 19 checkbook right there and wrote a gazillion.
- Inevitably, these patent holders, these plaintiffs
- 21 also seek treble damages for willfulness, even though
- the first time we've ever heard of the patents are years
- after the products have been developed, and indeed
- sometimes the claims have been written years after the
- 25 products have been developed. Generally the first and

For The Record, Inc.

```
only notice we've ever received of these patents are
```

- 2 when we receive the offer to purchase their patents.
- 3 So even when infringement allegations are
- 4 baseless, the cost of defense are extremely large for a
- 5 technology companies. I did a poll of some of the other
- 6 large technology companies, and the defense costs range
- 7 on the low end from \$4 to 5 million, for a
- 8 relatively small simple, one patent case, to well over
- 9 \$25 million for a more expensive case, with the
- 10 average being between \$5 to 10 million for most cases.
- 11 Additionally, every assertion we receive
- distracts our engineers from innovation and productive
- 13 efforts. The valuation of patents requires a
- 14 significant amount of time that would otherwise be spent
- on developing new products, not to mention the time
- 16 consuming prior art searches, discovery requests,
- depositions, testimony and travel to far away
- 18 jurisdictions.
- So to be clear, despite what Peter says, when a
- 20 licensor presents a legitimate claim that we are using
- or could be using their patented invention and the
- 22 royalty expectations are reasonable, we absolutely
- 23 voluntarily license the patents and do so very quickly,
- 24 well under the time frame that Peter mentioned, but more
- often the assertions that we receive present patents of

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 questionable validity and weak arguments of infringement
```

- 2 and yet request royalties of a magnitude far beyond the
- 3 value, the fair value of the alleged use of the
- 4 invention in our product.
- 5 So when our engineers and experts take a look at
- 6 the patent and they tell us that this has nothing to do
- 7 with our product or it's very clearly invalid, we still
- 8 can't ignore such a patent. The odds are stacked
- 9 against invalidating even weak patents. Further, there
- is uncertainty in the calculation of damages, especially
- in light of current law, and these factors together
- conspire to raise risk levels throughout unmeritorious
- 13 settlements, and hence fuel the cycle even further.
- 14 So as a rational business, we have to evaluate
- 15 the downside if we lose. Plaintiffs regularly seek a
- 16 percentage of the total value of the product that is
- 17 allegedly infringing rather than the value of what was
- 18 actually invented, which in many cases might be a minor
- 19 feature of a particular product, so this was
- demonstrated by the recent jury award of over \$500
- 21 million against Microsoft.
- 22 So even though the accused feature was the -- if
- 23 you go into the auto date picker feature within Outlook
- 24 when you're scheduling an appointment, if you float your
- 25 cursor over the date, a little drop down calendar will

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 appear, so that is what the alleged patent -- the patent
```

- 2 allegedly covered.
- 3 So the plaintiff in that case was permitted to
- 4 ask, seek from the jury an award of damages based on a
- 5 percent of the overall Outlook program, with all of its
- 6 many features and functions, and this followed shortly
- 7 after a jury awarded \$1.5 billion for
- 8 infringement by Microsoft of a patent alleged to be
- 9 infringed by an aspect of an MP3 player which was within
- 10 an overall PC, although this award was overturned by the
- 11 Court.
- So with this type of potential downside, while
- one might prefer to fight these baseless assertions on
- 14 principle or to deter opportunistic actors, effective
- 15 risk management for corporations unfortunately requires
- that in more cases than we want to, we settle, and the
- 17 money that we use for settlement or that we pay for
- 18 attorneys' fees not only continues to fuel the frenzy,
- 19 but it also directly impacts innovation, in that it
- 20 takes away -- absolutely takes money away from resources
- 21 such as hiring engineers and funding new R&D efforts.
- So one might ask: Why can't we simply avoid all
- 23 these issues by analyzing the patent landscape before we
- design a product and simply design around all these
- 25 patents? Well, the reason is simple. It is impossible

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 to achieve any degree of certainty by such clearance
```

- 2 searches with today's systems.
- 3 Beyond the sheer quantity of issued patents in
- 4 our field, in fact I did a search and in the last year
- 5 alone, if do you a search on wireless and Ethernet,
- 6 3,400 patents issued in the last year. Beyond this, the
- 7 current patent system also allows patent-holders to
- 8 construe claims so broadly that a reasonable product
- 9 company would often never recognize most of the patents
- 10 that ultimately are asserted in speculative litigation.
- 11 Even if we could identify such patents, this
- 12 knowledge would likely later lead to a claim of
- willfulness, even post-Seagate, on a patent that was not
- 14 relevant to our product development. So the end result
- is the exact opposite of the patent systems's purpose,
- 16 innovation is discouraged.
- The money to pay unjustified settlements is
- 18 taken away from R&D and promising technologies, and the
- 19 added costs ultimately are passed on to the consumer,
- 20 and more troubling perhaps is the lost opportunity for
- 21 new products and services that would lead to new jobs
- and the bolstering of America's technological
- 23 leadership, so we need to reform the system. The most
- important change we can make is to ensure that damages
- are based on the fair economic value of the innovation

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 that gave rise to the patentability.
```

- Now, there's been a lot of discussion and debate
- 3 on this issue, but at the end of the day, the question
- 4 is simple: What was actually invented and what value
- 5 does the true innovation add to the product?
- To that, to answer that question, the place to
- 7 start is the value of the invention rather than the
- 8 value of the product, and for illustrative purposes let
- 9 me give you an example.
- 10 If I invent a new tire, is it reasonable that I
- can pursue a percentage of the \$25,000 car because the
- 12 tire is incorporated in the car when it is sold? No
- 13 reasonable person would accept this premise, and yet
- 14 that is the current practice in the high tech patent
- 15 world.
- So as an innovator and patent holder, we are in
- 17 favor of a strong patent system that rewards innovation
- and promotes competition. The patent marketplace will
- continue to exist and will in fact be strengthened by
- 20 reform. There will always be demand to trade patents,
- 21 to aggregate them and for other reasons, but the value
- of patents should reflect the true value of what was
- 23 actually invented.
- So we look forward to the FTC's continued work
- on the patent system. There is a real opportunity to

For The Record, Inc.

```
once again drive productive change. If there is a more
```

- 2 balanced system, then expectations will be more
- 3 reasonable, and real patents will continue to thrive and
- 4 be even more readily licensed.
- 5 So the result will be a robust and more
- 6 efficient marketplace with transparency that fairly
- 7 values patents, and that's something that's good for
- 8 innovation and competition.
- 9 Thank you.
- 10 MS. MICHEL: Mallun, thank you very much, and
- finally to wrap up this portion is Brian Kahin.
- 12 MR. KAHIN: Do I have to control this.
- MS. MICHEL: Yes, just hit the arrow I think.
- 14 MR. KAHIN: Okay. Well, I'm delighted to be
- 15 here. I'm going to take a little bit different
- 16 perspective. I've heard a lot of things that I agree
- 17 with, surprising amount of things that I agree with, and
- 18 talk about some of the intentions within the system,
- 19 within more of a policy framework rather than an
- 20 individual enterprise framework.
- So I'm first going to offer you this quote from
- 22 Judge Rich, which I think expresses a perspective on the
- 23 patent system that underlies a lot of the jurisprudence
- of the Federal Circuit. This is something he said many,
- 25 many years ago, and I would describe this as a legal, a

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 very legal, narrow legal perspective on the patent
```

- 2 system as a right in a particular case.
- The problem with this perspective is that, one,
- 4 it assumes that the patent is an asset, and that colors
- 5 a lot of thinking about patents that is ultimately very
- 6 confusing because a patent is not a right to an
- 7 invention. A patent is basically, from an economic
- 8 perspective, an option to sue. It's a right to exclude,
- 9 and Judge Rich does not seem to recognize the liability
- 10 that a patent can create when he said this.
- 11 What I think is one of the really remarkable
- achievements of the FTC study back in 2002-2003 was to
- 13 attempt to integrate economic and legal perspectives on
- 14 the patent system, and they came up with this
- 15 significant recommendation. We have a long ways to go
- 16 to making this happen, as witnessed the apoplectic
- 17 response of the American Intellectual Property Law
- 18 Association response to this recommendation.
- So what I want to offer you is a framework for
- analysis, and it's not just the economic perspective or
- 21 the legal perspective that Judge Rich presented with the
- 22 economic perspective, which is a systemic perspective.
- 23 It is something in between. There is something in
- between, which is what most of these presentations have
- been focused on, and that is business practice. How do

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 you get from the individual patent to the systemic
```

- 2 effect?
- I also want to point out that even when you get
- 4 to the system, you're really only talking about the
- 5 patent system, and patents are intended to promote
- 6 innovation, so if you really wanted to look at this
- 7 correctly, you have to look at the patent system in
- 8 context, in the context of other innovation models, like
- 9 the development of standards, like open source and
- 10 software, and different means of appropriating returns
- 11 from invention.
- There are a number of those. Even though you
- may be told that people will not invent without patent,
- 14 you look at the Carnegie-Mellon survey of '94-95, and
- 15 you see there are a lot of other reasons that people can
- have confidence that they can appropriate returns from
- 17 invention, and that patents is not the top reason,
- 18 except in the pharmaceutical area.
- So even within, going back and focused now on
- 20 the MESO level, what I call the MESO level here,
- 21 business practice, there are different levels, and
- 22 Raymond gave us an excellent overview of business
- 23 models. I want to focus a little more on strategy,
- 24 particular practices and what drives them.
- So here are the patent uses identified in the

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Carnegie-Mellon survey: Preventing copying, 99 percent.
```

- 2 So that's kind of the classic notion that patents are an
- 3 adjunct to technology, that they're there to protect
- 4 against unscrupulous innovators, and I note though that
- 5 this is asked of manufacturers' R&D managers, so this is
- 6 a particular perspective. This did not ask lawyers. It
- 7 did not have other kinds of business like technology
- 8 development companies.
- 9 It's also important to point out that the
- 10 Carnegie-Mellon survey was the third of a series of
- 11 surveys, the Mansfield, Yale and then Carnegie-Mellon,
- and we haven't had anything of this scale in 15 years,
- despite the remarkable changes in patent practice.
- So I am offering these as examples of creative
- 15 uses that were not reflected in the Carnegie-Mellon
- 16 study. I'm just going to leave that there and not say
- anything more about these, although a lot could be said
- about these individually. You can look them over, and I
- 19 will have a draft written statement that lays these out
- 20 as well.
- Now, what I really want to focus on is
- information failure because I think this is what's
- 23 driving a lot of the problems we're having in the patent
- 24 system, and here again is a laundry list of the sources
- of information failure, and a lot of these have been

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 talked about individually.
```

- 2 The problem has not been looked at systemically,
- 3 and this explains why we have such an opaque system. We
- 4 don't have data, so I agree 100 percent with Peter that
- 5 we need data. We don't have it. We have funny data.
- 6 We have the problem of: How do you evaluate cross
- 7 licenses? Do you value them by the balancing payments
- 8 that are made, or do you value them by imputing value on
- 9 barter to every license from both sides?
- 10 That's the fundamental problem, and that lies at
- 11 the heart of that funny \$150 billion a year
- 12 figure. There's a paper by Carol Robbins at the
- Department of Commerce that lays that out, makes
- incorrect conclusions, but it's worth looking at, and
- 15 that is a big problem.
- So behind this we have a tension between two
- 17 different kinds of value. We have the value as
- 18 reflected in the cross license, which you can see is
- 19 undervalued if you want, and you can see the value in
- 20 the hands of the entity, the non-practicing entity. You
- 21 can call one the freedom to operate value, and you can
- 22 call the other the value extraction value, and the value
- 23 extraction value tends to be a lot higher than what the
- 24 patent is worth for freedom of operation.
- So here's an example of the opacity. This is

For The Record, Inc.

```
one of my favorite quotes from the 2002 hearings from
```

- 2 Frederick Telecky of Texas Instruments. He was saying
- 3 this in the context of we can't do searches to
- 4 disclose the standards process because we have no idea
- 5 what we have, but you can imagine that if TI has no idea
- of what it has in its own portfolio, how does a company
- 7 know what's in the dozens of portfolios and tens of
- 8 thousand of NPEs or technology company patents that are out
- 9 there? It's an impossible problem, and it discriminates
- against all but the largest companies who can
- 11 conceivably manage that kind of knowledge.
- Here's Mark Lemley expressing the problem more
- 13 recently. What's the solution in component industries,
- 14 and that's IT, you ignore patents, totally contrary to
- 15 the popular image of the patent system, totally contrary
- to the principle of disclosure that supposedly underlies
- 17 the patent system.
- So the underlying dynamic is we've got a very
- 19 opaque environment rife with information deficiencies of
- 20 all kinds. Information deficiencies drive information
- 21 asymmetry. Some people know more than others. Some
- 22 people will pay to find out more than others. Some
- 23 people build business models knowing a lot about
- 24 particular patents.
- Operating companies are focused on creating

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 products for the market, and you can see that
```

- 2 cross-licensing is a way of not only getting freedom of
- 3 action, but by not spending a lot of time and resources
- 4 on evaluating patents. Your stack is this high. My
- 5 stack is this high. Pay me this.
- Arbitrage, when you have information asymmetry,
- 7 you naturally get arbitrage. There is benefit from
- 8 moving patents from a low value environment,
- 9 cross-licensing environment, to a high value
- 10 environment, asserting individual patents, so that
- 11 becomes an important business driver.
- 12 That's why we see patents which were originally
- 13 committed to RAND licensing being asserted against
- companies that are using the standard because they've
- 15 moved out from under a portfolio and into the hands of a
- 16 specialist.
- So when you have arbitrage, you actually have
- incentives to secrecy, so I was discussing with Peter
- this morning the troll metaphor, and I went back and
- 20 researched Three Billy Goats Gruff to make this point
- 21 because it's not just a bridge. It wasn't a bridge as a
- 22 bridge. It was a bridge with a troll hidden under it,
- and so the problem is being surprised, so there's an
- 24 incentive to surprise.
- There's incentive not to disclose your patents

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 to a standard setting organization. There's an
```

- 2 incentive to hold back your patents until the technology
- 3 represented by the patent is embedded in a product or a
- 4 standard or the marketplace, and this is leveraging
- 5 against the sunk costs, the investments as Dan was
- 6 describing and Mallun that operating companies make that
- 7 isn't connected with the individual inventions.
- 8 There's a lot that goes into IT products in
- 9 terms of design, in terms of integration, in terms of
- 10 marketing and so on that is entirely independent of the
- value of underlying inventions if you can identify
- 12 those. So when you put those two together, you get
- ambush, surprise, multiplied by somebody else's
- investment in sunk costs, and so the way the system is
- operating in many contexts is to promote ambush.
- So my final conclusion is we have the irony of a
- 17 patent system that purports to promote public disclosure
- 18 actually promoting secrecy and secretive behavior, and
- we have a major problem of opacity and evaluation, and
- 20 part of the case for data is that we ought to know a lot
- 21 more about this.
- These are not credit default swaps that the
- 23 private sector has come up with. These are public
- 24 grants of rights that the public should have an interest
- 25 in understanding not only what we look like on paper but

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 how they're used in practice.
```

- 2 Thank you.
- 3 MS. MICHEL: Just hit page down I think. All
- 4 right. Thank you. Great.
- 5 MR. KAHIN: I can't get your symbol back.
- 6 MS. MICHEL: That's all right. That's all
- 7 right. Chris will do it. Is Chris here?
- 8 Thank you. That was very interesting. I think
- 9 our panel has done an excellent job today of bringing in
- 10 a wide variety of perspectives on these issues coming
- 11 from the very practical level of what's happening to the
- very high policy level of how should we think about it.
- Now, I think I misspoke when I called this the
- 14 rebuttal portion of the program. It's actually the
- 15 discussion part of the program, and I'm happy to lead
- off, but also, this is for our panelists to discuss with
- each other, so would any -- Peter?
- If you can also turn up your table tent when you
- want to speak so that we can take turns in an orderly
- 20 fashion, but, yes, Peter we would love to hear your
- 21 remarks on what you've heard.
- MR. DETKIN: We only have an hour or so so I
- 23 don't know if I reserved enough time for everybody.
- MS. MICHEL: 35 minutes.
- 25 MR. DETKIN: Dan led off his remarks by calling For The Record, Inc.

```
1 the management of Intellectual Ventures, I think the
```

- 2 word he used was unique. I'm not sure quite how to take
- 3 that, Dan. Hopefully, I'll at least demonstrate it's my
- 4 ability to take slings and arrows, which were coming
- 5 pretty fast from my fellow panelists. I did my best to
- 6 take some notes, and I apologize if my response is not
- 7 going to be polished because I have not had a chance to
- 8 see Dan's papers or having heard Mallun's comments ahead
- 9 of time.
- 10 MS. MICHEL: I suspect you knew what was coming.
- MR. DETKIN: No, I didn't know about Mallun, and
- 12 I applaud the fact that Dan is making an effort through
- 13 PatentFreedom to bring some data to the discussion. I
- 14 may disagree with his conclusions. This won't surprise
- 15 anybody. I do disagree with many of his conclusions.
- I believe that some of the data he is looking
- for is perhaps intended to support some conclusions, but
- none the less the effort's there. I think Brian
- supports me in saying this is something that's
- desperately needed in the debate.
- However, I also think that, I don't know if they
- 22 realize this, but both Dan and Mallun I think gave a
- 23 very eloquent argument in favor of the emerging market.
- 24 They both said that -- I think Dan used the word
- 25 stabilizing, Mallun used the quote from -- I forget

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 where it was from, about how the patent system could
```

- 2 cause people to drop innovation, innovative or product
- 3 productive efforts.
- 4 The fact is that in I think seven or ten
- 5 hearings and countless roundtables, not a single CEO or
- a single head of R&D ever stood up in the IT field and
- 7 said, I'm not developing a product or I cut down in R&D
- 8 effort because of patents. There's not a single company
- 9 that has ever said because of patents, we had to pay
- 10 material amounts of money.
- The RIM case might be the exception, and the RIM
- 12 case of course everybody knows about it. Oh, my God, it
- was \$600 million. You know what? It's a big
- 14 number because it's a big market. That deal was a steal
- 15 for RIM. They are selling tens of billions of dollars
- 16 worth of product, for which they paid for patents that
- were found infringed, woefully infringed, upheld on
- 18 appeal. They paid a few million dollars.
- I don't mean to -- especially today, while
- they're talking about billions over at the other
- 21 building for the car companies, I don't mean to
- disparage the amount of \$600 million, but as
- 23 compared to the tens of billions of dollars that RIM
- 24 makes every year in the infringing sales, I think it's a
- 25 pretty big deal, and more importantly there's nothing

For The Record, Inc.

```
destabilizing about the system as it exists.
```

- 2 Interestingly, Dan then also argues that we're
- 3 not paying folks enough. So where Dan agrees with me,
- 4 and I don't have to encourage Dan to speak up if I'm not
- 5 saying it right because I'm sure he will, but innovators
- 6 deserve to be paid. There's no question about that. We
- 7 want the economy to -- I mean, I can put up quote after
- 8 quote from Greenspan or Bernanke or pick your
- 9 favorite economist. Innovation is what drives this
- 10 economy. People that innovate deserve to be paid.
- I see a couple of economists in the room, and
- hopefully, at least a few of them are nodding their heads
- in agreement with me. How they get paid, that guy who
- 14 made the router that went 10 percent faster, he can get
- 15 paid by Mallun, and I applaud Mallun if she will pay
- 16 faster than Detkin law.
- I guess now Detkin law is no good, and I hope it
- 18 enjoyed its 30 minutes in the sun, but maybe Mallun does
- 19 pay, but for the most part, companies don't pay. No
- 20 matter how strong, no matter how good the patents are,
- 21 they don't pay. How do I know this? Because the market
- 22 exists.
- 23 You heard Ray's presentation. There are 17
- 24 different business models out there devoted to the fact
- 25 that people are not paying the folks who innovate. Are

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 they being paid enough? Well, reasonable minds can
```

- 2 differ on that. That's a commercial transaction. I'm
- 3 not sure that Congress has any place putting its thumb
- 4 on that particular scale.
- I would argue that they are. I don't think Dan
- 6 knows what we're paying. Those transactions tend not to
- 7 be public. I can tell you it's a very wide range. It
- 8 ranges from not very much to millions of dollars per
- 9 patent, but the fact is that they are being paid.
- 10 What really I think at the end of the day Dan
- and Mallun were both arguing was a more efficient
- market, a more efficient way for people who have real
- invention to get their invention rights to the Ciscos of
- 14 the world and to the IT companies of the world, and
- that's all we're providing.
- You may disagree with our particular model, and
- 17 maybe it won't succeed. I don't know. There's 17 other
- 18 models that are also out there, but at the end of the
- day, there's got to be a way to efficiently get money to
- 20 the inventors so they can invent, and we can get those
- 21 routers working 10 percent faster, and for those people
- to be paid and so they can go back and invent.
- MS. MICHEL: I would like to hear -- please, I
- don't mean to cut off any comments any one of you might
- want to make, but I'll throw out there: Is it helpful

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 to make a distinction between the use of patents for the
```

- 2 sake of tech transfer? I have another idea, I don't
- 3 have the capital to get it to market, so I go to a
- 4 company with those kinds of resources and say, "Please
- 5 create something new with my idea and pay me" versus a
- 6 business model that focuses on monetizeing the patent or
- 7 treating the patent as more of an economic asset to gain
- 8 licensing royalties from what some people have termed an
- 9 inadvertent infringer.
- 10 Is it worthwhile in thinking about patent policy
- and these issues to make that distinction, and if so,
- 12 how and why should we do that? Okay. Let's start with
- Brian, and we'll just move on down the table.
- 14 MR. KAHIN: I think the independent infringer
- 15 question is an important one, and I'm organizing a panel
- on that, so I've been thinking about it.
- MS. MICHEL: Good.
- 18 MR. MCCURDY: This will be January 14 at
- 19 Brookings as part of a larger event, but one of the
- reasons that copyright is accepted by consensus in
- 21 software is it does allow for independent inventions, so
- for a complex technology, which software is the most
- 23 extreme -- for complex technology, and software is the
- 24 most extreme example of that, where invention is
- 25 ubiquitous and constant and you can't manage the

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 information costs of who invented whom, who invented
```

- 2 what rather, that makes a lot of sense.
- 3 Let me comment on two points that Peter made.
- 4 One is we need to be careful about distinguishing
- 5 invention from innovation because innovation is
- 6 generally understood to mean not just the invention, but
- 7 the whole process that Dan and Mallun are talking of
- 8 commercializing ideas and getting them into a product
- 9 and getting the product to market, making real changes
- in the tangible economy.
- 11 Finally, an observation that Peter and I may
- agree on because Mark Lemley and Nathan Myhrvold agree on
- this point, that we need to have more transparent
- 14 licensing markets, and the way to do that is to require
- 15 the recording of license transactions.
- Now, I'm sure lawyers are going to have a fit
- 17 about that, and a lot of business people too, but until
- 18 we take decisive steps to remedy the problem of
- information costs, we're not going to have good markets.
- MS. MICHEL: Thank you. Mallun, and I would be
- interested in all the panelists' views of this concept
- of a more transparent market, given that it's hard to
- 23 imagine an efficiently operating market with a lack of
- 24 information.
- MS. YEN: So on your first question, I think

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 that is a good question to ask, the idea of independent
```

- 2 invention versus where the first time you've learned of
- 3 a patent is years after the product has come to market,
- 4 and many times the claims have actually been drafted
- 5 years after the products have come to market.
- First is we're affirmatively seeking technology
- 7 to incorporate into your products. The mass majority of
- 8 the claims that we've seen are the former rather than
- 9 the latter, and I'm going to agree with Peter in that
- innovators deserve to be paid, absolutely, but what they
- 11 deserve to be paid is fair value.
- 12 If a company actually makes a router that's 10
- 13 percent faster than ours, then we will pay for it. In
- fact, we have. We've acquired over 130 companies and
- 15 paid billions and billions of dollars for those
- 16 acquisitions.
- Now, where they do not deserve to be paid is
- 18 where they stretch interpretations based on existing law
- and try and gain the system based on the imbalances, and
- then they deserve to be paid exactly what their patent's
- 21 worth, and in that case, we will have a disagreement as
- 22 to what the patent is worth.
- 23 In terms of transparency, Suzanne, and along
- 24 with that, I agree. I think contributing to this
- over-valuation is the lack of information, lack of

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 information by what the licensors are charging in terms
```

- of royalty rates, how much he was being paid to buy or
- 3 sell or license patents. Who in fact is even buying and
- 4 selling and licensing the patents is unclear in many
- 5 cases.
- 6 So it has created a very inefficient
- 7 marketplace, and it has allowed people to exploit the
- 8 system and try and play different companies or licensees
- 9 against one another, and so I think that Brian's idea is
- 10 an interesting one about recording licenses, and I'll
- 11 have to give that a little bit more thought, but I have
- 12 to say it doesn't offend me, and I am in favor of a
- marketplace and a system that has no transparency.
- MS. MICHEL: Dan?
- 15 MR. MCCURDY: So I first want to congratulate
- 16 the Commission on finding the one thing that I know we
- have in common, that is, more data is better, so that
- has to be the take away, if nothing else.
- 19 With respect to transparency, Peter made a
- 20 remark with respect to what he said was an agreement
- 21 among us that a more efficient market was better, and
- I think that that is certainly true. One way, of
- 23 course, of doing that is to have a much more transparent
- 24 market.
- Today if there's a small inventor who wants to

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 sell or has patents, five years ago they had no idea how
```

- 2 to go about that. Intellectual Ventures, without
- 3 question because of its funding and its vision, pursued
- 4 inventions worldwide for acquisition, massive phone
- 5 contacts within inventors all over the world, huge
- databases to figure out who had patents in particular
- 7 areas and so on, so they had the ability to begin to
- 8 identify this.
- 9 The problem is that's not an efficient market.
- 10 It is not a transparent market, so if everybody on the
- earth who had a patent that they wanted to sell or were
- 12 contacted by someone to buy their patent had a
- 13 transparent marketplace to take that patent to advertise
- 14 that they may want to sell it, so that any potential
- 15 buyer, whether it's a corporation or a patent aggregator
- or anyone else, had an opportunity to purchase it, the
- 17 patent owner suddenly has a chance to get real market
- value for the asset, and those that could be impacted by
- it have an opportunity to buy it as opposed to a
- transaction that's bought in the dark of night for
- 21 relatively low money, and then as Brian put it, is used
- 22 to ambush companies who were not even aware that the
- 23 patent was ever for sale. That is not -- it's certainly
- 24 not in the public interest to have that continue.
- With respect to tech transfer, there's two kinds

For The Record, Inc.

```
of deals. I mentioned in my testimony that patent
```

- 2 licenses are selling a product no one wants, and it's
- 3 absolutely true, and I did a lot of it. As president of
- 4 intellectual property at Lucent I did a lot of it.
- 5 Certainly at IBM I did a lot of it, and you are selling
- 6 a product no one wants, but they feel compelled or are
- 7 made to be compelled to ultimately pay for it.
- 8 So, the good news is that there are friendly
- 9 deals that can be done. Tech transfers is one of those.
- 10 The problem is that if all you have is an idea in a
- 11 patent and you have not invested to develop that idea
- into a product, preferably a successful product where
- you can truly teach, engineers can teach other engineers
- how to go about making that a commercial successful,
- 15 there's nothing to transfer because you have no
- 16 knowledge.
- 17 All you've got is what is taught in an idea
- that's available in a patent, but unless you actually
- 19 have done something, like I've mentioned, 20 times the
- amount of money you spent on development rather than
- 21 research, which is the creation of the idea, you don't
- have anything to transfer, so it's hollow. We can
- 23 follow-up on that if you want. You look puzzled, so we
- 24 can talk about that more.
- 25 Finally, Peter said that I used the word

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 something about the market was -- the brokerage market
```

- 2 was stabilizing. What I said in my testimony was the
- 3 ability --
- 4 MR. DETKIN: Destabilizing.
- 5 MR. MCCURDY: That the brokers market is
- 6 destabilizing?
- 7 MR. DETKIN: That the growth of this market in
- 8 general was destabilizing. You used that word. You
- 9 have a speech.
- 10 MR. MCCURDY: What I said was is what is
- destabilizing is the lack of the ability to
- 12 counter-assert. That's what my testimony said, and
- 13 Intellectual Ventures, as far as I know, cannot be
- 14 counter-asserted against nor can any other NPE. That's
- 15 what's destabilizing.
- MR. DETKIN: My turn?
- MS. MICHEL: Yes, please, Peter.
- 18 MR. DETKIN: We all have our tents up here.
- MS. MICHEL: Yes, which is good, a good thing.
- MR. DETKIN: A couple of comments, first on
- innovation versus invention and whether you get to be
- 22 paid for coming up with a product design. Again, think
- 23 back to the university professor who thinks of a way to
- 24 make a router 10 percent faster. Under Mallun's and
- 25 Brian's view of the world, he has to start a company,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 which then gets bought out by Cisco in order to be paid
```

- 2 for his invention.
- Fortunately, that's not the way the system
- 4 works, and I see your tent going up right away, but the
- fact is if he's got an invention, he should be allowed
- 6 to be paid for it. Now, should he be paid as much, if all
- 7 he's got is the invention, the patent, and Cisco is going to
- 8 do a lot of the heavy lifting and turning it into a
- 9 product? Of course not. That's part of the
- 10 negotiation.
- 11 Well, but the patent law isn't clear. Actually
- 12 it is clear. The patent law has evolved over time. The
- damages law is very clear. Are there occasional
- outlier cases at the district court level? Yeah, the
- 15 Microsoft/Lucent case, well, Mallun was forthright
- enough to say that got overturned. The \$500 million
- 17 case that she talked about, that's still in
- 18 post-trial motion. That's yet to be appealed.
- 19 The system sorts these things out. It may take
- 20 time. That's the way the system works. We can't
- 21 legislate, you can't use -- to borrow a phrase from
- Barack Obama, you can't use a sledgehammer when a
- 23 scalpel will do, and that's what some of the proposed
- 24 legislation will do.
- I mean, even going back to the so-called

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 egregious example of, well, a patent in a tire should
```

- 2 get --recover from the car. Well, I haven't read that
- 3 patent, but you know what, if the wheel well needs to be
- 4 redesigned and the patent or the redesigned car or the
- 5 patented car enable drag to be reduced by 35 percent
- 6 because this new tire in the new redesigned wheel well,
- 7 as a result this car sold like hot cakes because of that
- 8 particular design? Yeah, he gets a percentage of the
- 9 \$25,000 car.
- 10 On the other hand, if this tire just improved
- 11 traction in mud and snow, then, no, probably not, and
- 12 Georgia Pacific factor, God, eight or nine -- I didn't
- 13 know this was going to be a debate on patent reform, I
- think we were talking about the market, but specifically
- 15 calls for let's discuss that issue, and it says let's
- 16 have expert testimony on that issue.
- Is all expert testimony perfect? No. Is
- 18 anything that happens in a courtroom perfect? No. Is
- 19 it messy? Yes, but you know what, that's what the
- 20 appellate courts are for.
- 21 Finally, I have to talk about this a little bit
- 22 -- this gets to the independent invention, and I'll get
- 23 to that in a second but, boy, these searchs. I agree
- 24 with Mallun that she is not, by searching patents, going
- to find every patent relative to her business, but

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 that's no excuse not to try.
- 2 And as Brian puts out in his -- you can't raise
- 3 your thing any higher, Mallun, it's already up.
- 4 Brian quoted Mark Lemley. It went beyond dispute in all
- of the hearings and the House and Senate. High tech
- 6 companies, don't even try to search out patents. Nobody
- 7 testified and said, "Yeah we make an effort to find the
- 8 patents to do a product clearance."
- I agree, they're not going to find them all, but
- 10 you know what? 3,500 patents over the course of the
- 11 year doesn't sound like that much to me to a \$40 billion
- company like Cisco, because not all those patents
- 13 -- I mean, some of those patents you could immediately
- 14 throw out, so it puts you down to 2,000 patents. That's
- 15 40 patents a week.
- I think a company like Cisco can quickly look
- 17 through 40 patents a week and see if any of them are
- going to be an issue so they can proactive -- they don't
- 19 have to design around them all. I know design around is
- 20 expensive, but they can then proactively start the
- 21 discussion and say, Look, Mr. Professor, you invented
- 22 something that we think we could use a license to, let's
- 23 have a discussion.
- Oh, finally on your point about selling product,
- there are companies that do exactly what you're talking

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 about - QualComm, Rambus, ARM. Those do follow that
```

- 2 exact business model. That's an 18th for your list
- 3 there.
- 4 MR. MCCURDY: It was on there.
- 5 MS. MICHEL: No, it was on there. Okay. Ray, I
- 6 would love to hear your comments.
- 7 MR. DETKIN: I'm sorry, do you want me to talk
- 8 about the transparent market or do you want to give
- 9 Ray --
- 10 MS. MICHEL: Let's let Ray talk, and then we
- 11 will come back to that. I would like to hear those
- 12 thoughts.
- MR. DETKIN: Sorry. I forgot about that.
- 14 MR. MILLIEN: I just wanted to say, and it's
- 15 interesting to hear the conversation between Mallun, Dan
- and Peter, but as a market observer, what I think is
- missing from the debate is I think we all need to step
- 18 back because I think a lot of us are losing the forest
- 19 through the trees.
- Yes, it's right that we need more data because
- 21 if your plaintiff had more data, he wouldn't ask for a
- 22 gazillion dollars, right? If I want to buy a one
- 23 bedroom or two bedroom ranch in Palo Alto, I can look at
- 24 the comparables, and my real estate agent and the
- 25 seller's real estate agent could come to a more rational

For The Record, Inc.

```
discussion as to value because there's just more data.
```

- 2 So we all agree to that, but I think in terms of
- 3 the FTC and the patent reform debate, the debate has not
- 4 been very balanced, and you asked: Should we look at
- 5 individual inventors versus tech transfer? I think the
- 6 patent policies have to be neutral because for every non-
- 7 practicing entity that's quote, unquote, extorting a
- 8 large company, there is really a small inventor who
- 9 pitched the idea to Cisco. Cisco said, Go away, and
- 10 then ten months later, Cisco developed -- that feature
- 11 ends up in a product. I'm using that as an example.
- 12 I'm not engaging in trade lobbying.
- So what I'm saying is that the policy needs to
- be neutral because we talk about there are quote,
- 15 unquote, real companies doing real quote, unquote, doing
- real R&D, but if you look at the studies, 80 percent of
- the R&D budget of a Fortune 500 is just to improve
- 18 existing products. Only 20 percent of that research is
- 19 truly innovative to truly bring new products to market.
- If you look at the studies, small businesses
- 21 invent 13 to 14 times at a higher rate than large
- businesses. That's why Apple bought the technology for
- 23 the iPod, bought the technology for the iPhone. It's
- really small inventors, so what's missing from the
- debate is you have a bio and pharma versus software and IT,

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 but what's really missing from the debate I think is the
- 2 patent policy has to be neutral because you have to
- 3 engage in patent reform, which is figuring out how to
- 4 decrease transparency, how to get better patents through
- 5 the patent system and not really engage in patent
- 6 litigation or patent infringement reform.
- 7 I think everybody here -- and the argument as
- 8 whether it's good or bad for the economy, I don't know.
- 9 Some macro-economists might say, troll litigation is
- good for the economy because there are 20 lawyers eating
- off that, paying their mortgages. There's court
- 12 reporters eating off that.
- 13 It's sort of like the prison system. If we got
- 14 rid of crime, what would all the correction officers do?
- 15 So that's all I have to say.
- MS. MICHEL: All right, interesting. Let me ask
- 17 a specific question: Several of you have mentioned a
- 18 need for more data. Could you expand on that point for
- 19 a moment? What sort of data would be helpful? How
- 20 might people look for it?
- 21 Also I'll take that opportunity to say the FTC's
- 22 accepting public comments through February 5th. You can
- 23 see that on the conference web site, and it would love
- 24 to hear ideas from everyone on this point, all points,
- 25 but that one too.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 MR. DETKIN: Do you mind if I start since that
```

- 2 kind of goes to the transparency issue?
- 3 MS. MICHEL: Sure, and then we'll work down the
- 4 table.
- 5 MR. DETKIN: Fair enough. Once again,
- 6 surprising there's agreement on the transparency issue,
- 7 although I guess in a sense I'm agreeing with myself
- 8 because Brian cited an article written by Professor
- 9 Lemley and my partner, Nathan Myhrvold. Absolutely, we
- 10 think that the market needs to move to become more
- 11 efficient, become more transparent, and would we
- 12 participate? Absolutely.
- Are we going to lead the way by ourselves? No.
- I can sense that question in the audience, no more than
- 15 Cisco would publish its product plans before --
- unless everyone agreed that they're going to publish
- 17 their product plans.
- 18 MS. MICHEL: You're saying no unilateral
- 19 disarmament.
- 20 MR. DETKIN: Right. I mean, it's a competitive
- 21 market, and I'm not going to give my competitors access
- to competitive data unless it's going to be reciprocal,
- 23 but at the end of the day, markets don't spring up from
- 24 whole cloth. Ocean Tomo, when Ray used to be there, is
- doing a great job to with their auctions. These are

For The Record, Inc.

```
open bid, open cry auctions run by -- if you haven't
```

- been to these, they're great -- run by a Sotheby's
- 3 auctioneer, complete with gavel and pomp and
- 4 circumstance, and he auctions off patents. You don't get
- 5 more transparent than that.
- 6 What percentage of patents sales does that
- 7 comprise? A pretty small percent, but is that a step in
- 8 the right direction towards the complete, open,
- 9 transparent, efficient market that Dan envisions?
- 10 Absolutely, and I think that's the direction we're
- 11 heading.
- 12 That would be -- to get to the question you just
- asked, Suzanne, that would be the way of getting the
- data that we need because as I understand, the debate
- 15 has shifted in Congress from damages are out of control
- 16 to settlements are out of control because of fear of out
- of control damages, but then when you say, okay, well,
- 18 we can get data on damages because that's in court
- opinions, but where is the data on the settlements?
- You can't see any of that. We have to trust the
- 21 people who are making these allegations always behind
- 22 closed doors. Again they're not reported. You won't
- 23 find them in the SEC, so that we know they're not
- 24 material, but still we don't know what they are, so
- 25 that's the data we need.

For The Record, Inc.

```
If we're going to have a damages debate based on
out of control settlements because it's shifted from out
of control damage awards, let's get the data on what the
settlements are and not have it be behind closed doors.
MS. MICHEL: Dan, any thoughts on transparency
```

- MS. MICHEL: Dan, any thoughts on transparency and data that would be useful to inform the debate?

 MR. MCCURDY: I think under the transparency of
- the marketplace, I've spoken to that. With respect to data, there are at least a few that I think would be very important.
- The first is much greater transparency as to the 11 12 true ownership of the patent, and so I would go so far 13 as to say that a patent should not be enforceable unless 14 it has been properly assigned, registered, and I would 15 go further to say that that registration ought to include and keep updated all upward and downward 16 affiliates of that owner. I think that would help 17 enormously as a piece of data. 18
- The second would be data surrounding the price for the sale of patents, much like a stock market operates, that would be extremely useful.
- The third would be disclosure of the price and circumstance at least at some level of licenses for patents, and the issue is very simple. If it's a one-way license not involving a cost, that's relatively

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 straightforward. There's a royalty rate and/or a paid
```

- 2 up price that's given for that.
- In a cross-license, it would be useful, and
- 4 we've had some minor discussion about this, to figure
- 5 out how you can attribute value to what that cross-license
- is, which of course is one of the huge issues with non-
- 7 practicing entities because there cannot be a
- 8 cross-license.
- 9 We can't properly attribute what the distortion
- 10 is in the market of an NPE versus what might otherwise
- 11 be by two entities in a more level playing field.
- 12 Again, data would be extremely useful, and frankly, if
- operating companies are bothered enough by the problem,
- 14 particularly of non-practicing entities, notwithstanding
- 15 the practice over decades of not disclosing this kind of
- information, I think it's about time. You can't have
- 17 your cake and eat it.
- 18 MS. MICHEL: Mallun?
- MS. YEN: So I think Dan very articulately
- 20 elaborated on some of the issues relating to
- 21 transparency that I mentioned earlier, so let me just
- 22 address a couple of points. I guess Peter might not
- 23 share his cab with me to the airport by the time we're
- 24 done, but....
- MR. DETKIN: I'll share it, but you're paying.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 MS. YEN: You're always asking for money. So or
```

- 2 Peter's points of we only buy companies who have
- 3 actually designed products or brought products to
- 4 market, that's absolutely not true. When we have come
- 5 across patents that are truly innovative, pioneering
- 6 patents, we have sought them out and bought either the
- 7 patents or the company for the sole purpose of acquiring
- 8 the patents, so that point is just not true.
- 9 The second point about the tire, and like I
- 10 said, it was -- I had mentioned it was an illustrative
- 11 example, and of course if the reason for buying a car
- was because it was designed around this really neat, new
- 13 tire that made you have a hundred miles, get a hundred
- 14 miles per gallon, and zero to 60 in three seconds, et
- 15 cetera, then, yes, that's the entire market value.
- 16 That's the value of what was the invention, but I'm
- 17 talking about a tire.
- 18 Let's see. Second, so, Peter -- I want to ask
- 19 Peter a question before I make a comment, which is:
- When you were in my position at Intel, how often did you
- 21 conduct patent searches?
- MR. DETKIN: We did, absolutely.
- 23 MS. YEN: Because what I said earlier today was
- 24 not that we don't conduct patent searches, which is what
- 25 Peter said, but I said it's impossible -- even when you

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 conduct patent searches, it is impossible to avoid the
```

- 2 amount of claims that we have.
- 3 MR. DETKIN: I get to ask a question now. Do
- 4 you do product clearance searches?
- 5 MS. YEN: So what we do is when we go in to a
- 6 new market, it depends, it's a case by case
- 7 circumstance. If we go into a new technology area where
- 8 we have not been in, like routing and switching, since
- 9 the beginning of time, then we will do some searching to
- 10 make sure that we steer clear, and if we find some
- 11 patents, we make efforts to design around.
- In areas where we have been the pioneer from day
- one, it does not make sense to do a product clearance
- search because one, we've been there, we know what's out
- 15 there; two, we know the delay. It's three to five to
- seven years for a patent to issue.
- So, your search is necessarily out of date as
- 18 of the date you searched it, and even if you look at
- 19 published applications, the claims often look very
- 20 different than when they actually issue, and not all
- 21 claims are published. So I didn't say we don't search.
- Third, you can cut me off any time, Suzanne,
- 23 because I can probably go on until the end of the
- 24 session. On the budgeting side, on the budgeting and
- 25 Peter's claim that not a single CEO sat up here and

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 said, because I had to spend money on patent litigation,
```

- 2 I wasn't able to fund whatever.
- I can tell you from personal experience that
- 4 when we go through the budgeting cycle, and I get told
- 5 repeatedly you are a cost center, a dollar that goes to
- 6 you is a dollar that's taken away from engineering.
- 7 This is absolutely the case. And, in fact, it struck
- 8 home -- it struck a chord with me when I was talking to
- 9 one of our engineers who had to travel across the
- 10 country to testify at a patent infringement trial, one
- 11 that we actually did end up prevailing on.
- I called him, and I said, thank you so much for
- taking the time out, I know it's a huge burden, no one
- wants to spend time with all these lawyers, et cetera,
- 15 et cetera, and I said, I hope you get at least a nice
- 16 bonus for this.
- He looked at me, and he said, "I don't care about
- 18 a bonus." He said, "All I want and all I need is \$300,000
- so I can hire the ten -- to rent the office space to
- 20 fund the -- to house the 10 engineers that I want to, to
- 21 be able to fund this particular project," and I thought
- 22 about it.
- 23 \$300,000 in my budget where we spend \$50 million
- 24 a year is nothing, and yet it is so -- it has
- such a direct impact on whether or not he was able to

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 hire a team and develop a product, so it absolutely
```

- 2 takes money away from innovation and engineers being
- 3 able to hire the engineers and have the resources to
- 4 develop product. And I'll stop there and give Brian
- 5 some time.
- 6 MS. MICHEL: Thank you. Brian?
- 7 MR. KAHIN: Well, I want to say generally in
- 8 response to this discussion is that I think perhaps the
- 9 greatest service that FTC could do in a future report is
- 10 to take a run at evaluating search costs, information
- 11 costs, negotiation costs and risk costs involved in
- 12 patent practice.
- Some specifics -- and I think we got to be aware
- 14 that there's a bit of a catch 22 here, because part of
- 15 the problem of opacity is that there's too much
- 16 information out there of uncertain quality, and we have
- 17 to be very careful about adding more information of
- 18 uncertain quality.
- I think the settlements are extremely important.
- In part, this is to get at some of the problems of
- 21 settlements and doing things like suppressing prior art
- or the amount of settlements that may go on around low
- 23 quality patents which Carl Shapiro has shown will happen
- 24 more. There's a big free rider problem with low quality
- 25 patents.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              One point that we could get at is to acquire
 2
      registration of notice letters. That would be a very
      simple provision and would reveal who is doing broadcast
 3
 4
      assertions, how big a problem broadcast assertions are.
 5
              The ownership that Dan was mentioning who owns
      patents, who has assignments, who has exclusive licenses,
 6
 7
      and this goes into the nonexclusive recording, there should
 8
      be failure to accrue damages for periods that these
 9
      things are unregistered, particularly assignments and
10
      exclusive licenses.
              For public companies, we should require
11
12
      recording of licensing income, out and in, by type of
13
      license, so separate out the copyright from the patent,
14
      separate out exclusive from nonexclusive.
15
              We should require public companies that they
16
      report on intellectual property as assets and
17
      liabilities, not just assets, liabilities. What is
      their exposure to intellectual property? I mean, this
18
19
      is going to be a best guess to start with, but unless we
20
      start making those requirements we aren't going to
21
      develop the methodologies to do it.
22
              I'll stop there.
23
              MS. MICHEL: All right. Thank you. We'll wrap
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

up in a couple minutes, but any of the panelists have

any thoughts on how the eBay decision, in particular, has

24

25

```
1 changed the dynamic of the non-practicing entity seeking
```

- 2 royalties. Has it solved all our problems? It doesn't
- 3 solve all the problems that some have asserted or it
- 4 doesn't sound like you all think that.
- But, Peter, do you have any comments?
- 6 MR. DETKIN: Yeah. Actually I'm glad you
- 7 brought that up because Dan quoted my testimony from
- 8 when I was here in 2001. I want to make sure that's --
- 9 that was actually in the context of injunctions that I
- 10 was talking, and I know that Dan and others on his side
- of the fence are very fond of taking that quote and
- 12 taking it out of context.
- I was talking about injunctions. I had a
- 14 particular remedy that I proposed. I thought that the
- 15 appropriate remedy was a stay of injunction pending
- 16 appeal. The Supreme Court decided to say basically non-
- 17 practicing entities -- actually they specifically said --
- 18 this is not a hard and fast rule, non-practicing
- 19 entities still can get injunctions, which of course has
- 20 been interpreted by every court as non-practicing
- 21 entities cannot get injunctions.
- But either way, I think it's too early to tell
- 23 how that decision affects the landscape of licensing. I
- don't know if Mallun has something or Dan has a
- 25 different viewpoint of that.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              MS. MICHEL: Yeah, Mallun?
 2
              MS. YEN: So I think the eBay decision has
 3
      helped in clarifying the law. It was a good decision
 4
      and the right decision, but I do agree with Peter that
 5
      the impact of eBay is unclear. You have some courts who
 6
      have created an exception for licensing entities or
 7
      academic or research institutions saying that if they
      don't grant the injunction, then the licensing institute
 8
 9
      will be irreparably harmed because it will deter others
10
      from taking a license.
              There are also cases, and I think this ended up
11
12
      settling so we didn't know how it ended up turning
13
      out -- but there's a case where a company, a non-
14
      practicing entity sued a couple of defendants, ended up
15
      settling with the first defendant and then assigned the
16
      right to obtain -- a partial right in the patent to that
17
      first defendant, who was also a competitor of the second
18
      defendant.
19
              So that the right to obtain an injunction went
20
      to the first defendant, and the right to obtain the
21
      licensing royalties came to the licensing entity, so I
22
      think the case -- Peter is nodding his head, so he
23
      probably knows what I'm talking about.
```

24

25

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

So I think the case settled so I don't know how

it actually turned out, but there's lots of creative

- 1 things like that out there. You have other licensing
- 2 entities who are forming and creating small companies
- 3 that are developing some -- purporting to develop some
- 4 products. In fact one of them, in a phone call -- well,
- 5 it first started out with the patent, an offer for us to
- 6 buy their patents.
- 7 Then they said, no, no, we're a real company,
- 8 let me send something to you. They sent me a product, but
- 9 if you had seen the product, you would laugh. It was
- 10 just a phone in a box. Actually it was a handset in a
- 11 box.
- 12 So that you have -- these are some very smart
- people who are involved in these licensing ideas. They
- 14 will look for ways to get around it and so time will
- tell as to what the full effect of eBay is.
- MS. MICHEL: And Dan, did you have a comment on
- 17 that?
- MR. MCCURDY: Yeah, so has eBay helped with the
- 19 NPE problem? The statistics would indicate no. Cases
- 20 continue to go up, post eBay. The real benefit I think
- is in the compilation of the various cases, so if you
- look at KSR and Lucent and MedImmune and SanDisk and
- 23 eBay, just as examples, and there are maybe one or two
- 24 others. I think the compilation of those, the latest
- 25 Quanta more recently are beginning to help.

For The Record, Inc.

```
I think the latest Volkswagen case, with respect
```

- 2 to venue, is helping, and I suspect that the courts are
- 3 going to hit on a couple others, and the Congress may or
- 4 may not be able to, on some of these biggest issues,
- 5 depending on whether industry ever gets its act together
- or not so it can agree to go to Congress to tell
- 7 Congress how to help, some of the big issues like
- 8 apportionment and venue which is clearly a stalemate at
- 9 the legislative level.
- 10 So it's a compilation that I think is helping.
- 11 MS. MICHEL: One of you had put up a
- 12 quote from the FTC report that talked about what
- sometimes is referred to as the hold-up problem, a
- 14 problem that a manufacturing firm is going to be willing
- 15 to pay a license based on its cost and its switching
- 16 costs rather than the value of the technology, when a
- 17 patentee asserts the patent once the product is on the
- 18 market.
- There had been some discussion in the literature
- 20 that perhaps *eBay* would help with that, the ability to
- 21 not shut down the product, get an injunction on the
- 22 product, to change that settlement or licensing
- 23 negotiation.
- Does anyone have a sense of whether reality has
- 25 played out that way. Mallun? I'm sorry, Dan?

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 MR. MCCURDY: I was going to say but the reality
```

- 2 is the request for injunctive relief is, of course,
- 3 completely automatic, just as the inequitable conduct
- 4 defense is automatic, just as willful infringement is
- 5 automatic, and so everyone has always asked for it, and
- 6 frankly I don't think that -- particularly in the high
- 7 tech industry, it's virtually never granted or at least
- 8 not sustained.
- 9 So people deal with it, they know it, and I
- 10 don't think the fact that the non-practicing entity has
- a harder time to obtain an injunction is stopping them
- 12 from pursuing the infringement.
- MS. MICHEL: Mallun, and then we will let
- 14 everyone have lunch.
- 15 MS. YEN: I think that's right. I think that
- even after *eBay*, you don't see a decrease. You actually
- 17 see an increase in the number of cases that are filed so
- we still have a litigation problem.
- I can tell you when we're assessing the risk and
- 20 whatnot on how to go forward when we receive a claim, we
- can't rely on *eBay* to say, there's no injunction
- 22 risk. It continues to be a factor, and we need to
- factor that into our decision on how to proceed.
- MR. MCCURDY: Just one quick follow-up with
- 25 that, in the end the reason is is a simple one, which is

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 remember that non-practicing entities are not interested
```

- 2 in blocking a competitor. They only want money so the
- 3 fact that they can't block the competitor doesn't matter
- 4 in the end as much because they're still going to be
- 5 able to ultimately get, if they pursue it, a judgment of
- 6 infringement of a valid patent if both are in fact true,
- 7 so there it is.
- 8 MS. MICHEL: All right. Why don't we wrap up.
- 9 If everyone would just like to take -- anyone who would
- 10 like to make a 30 second final statement and then we'll
- 11 break for lunch.
- Peter, you've got your tent up so why don't you
- 13 go first then.
- 14 MR. DETKIN: This actually might cost my
- 15 companionship to the airport, but I think Mallun's last
- 16 comment really summarizes my concern more than anything.
- 17 You heard Dan say that eBay or no, people never
- 18 got the injunction. They never got treble damages. It
- 19 was always put in there automatically.
- The high tech industry, the people in the
- 21 trenches knew you didn't get them. eBay kind of
- 22 solidified that and said, you're not going to get it,
- and the cases since then except for the one set of
- 24 stupid lawyer tricks that Mallun mentioned, the cases
- 25 that were settled where they tried to get it. But Mallun

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 said, but we still settle cases in fear of that.
```

- That's a reprise of what I hear over and over
- 3 again on Capitol Hill. Notwithstanding the fact, and
- 4 Mallun's now furiously writing so I might need rebuttal
- 5 here, but notwithstanding the fact that the damages law
- 6 is pretty well settled and pretty well handled at the
- 7 appellate level if not the District Court level, we now
- 8 hear, yes, but settlements are out of control for fear
- 9 of the run-away damages claim, even though there's no
- 10 evidence of the run-away damages claim.
- 11 This is where I guess -- this is probably the
- main thing coming out of here, the transparency and the
- real data on what is going on out there would help
- 14 because maybe if we had that transparency, we wouldn't
- 15 have that fear of the needless dread.
- MS. MICHEL: Thank you very much. Any final
- 17 comments?
- 18 MS. YEN: Sorry, I was going to let Dan go.
- MR. MCCURDY: I was going to say thank you.
- MR. DETKIN: I forgot to add thank you.
- 21 MS. YEN: I do have one final one before I say
- thank you.
- MS. MICHEL: Sure.
- MS. YEN: So Peter said that I said that we
- 25 settle cases in fear of an injunction. Did anyone else

For The Record, Inc.

```
hear me say that, because I didn't? What I said was
 1
 2
      it's a factor. eBay has improved the situation and it is
 3
      better, but we cannot completely rule it out because
 4
      people like Peter are very clever.
 5
              MS. MICHEL: All right.
 6
                           I'm unique and clever, all right.
              MR. DETKIN:
 7
              MS. MICHEL: Well, I want to thank our panelists
 8
      for a very lively discussion and say that we could not
      possibly exhaust this topic in the time that we had, and
 9
10
      we welcome comments to the FTC or even to the staff
      individually on the topic. Thank you, and we'll return
11
12
      at one o'clock to hear Chief Judge Michel.
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
```

For The Record, Inc.

1	AFTERNOON SESSION
2	(Resumed at 1:08 p.m.)
3	MS. MICHEL: Thank you very much for returning.
4	We'll get started now. WELCOME come back to the
5	afternoon session of the FTC's first hearing on the
6	evolving IP marketplace.
7	For those of you who couldn't join us this
8	morning, please know that these sessions are being web
9	cast, hello to everybody watching from your desk, and
10	you will be able to view that web cast later. The tape
11	will stay up on the conference web site.
12	There's also a realtime transcript going up, and
13	we are having made a more perfect transcript, which will
14	be up a couple weeks from now. We will be posting the
15	speaker slides and any papers that they would like to
16	submit to us, so there will be plenty of information for
17	your interest.
18	It's now my distinct pleasure to introduce the
19	Honorable Paul R. Michel, who is Chief Judge of the
20	Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. The Chief
21	Judge has been a member of the court for 20 years now,
22	and its chief for the past four.
23	His tenure on the Federal Circuit, like his
24	career prior to joining the court, demonstrates a small
25	commitment to public service. He's worked in the
	For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Philadelphia District Attorney's Office as an assistant
```

- 2 special Watergate prosecutor in the Justice Department
- 3 and as a senate staff member.
- 4 The Chief Judge's work on the court, his
- 5 numerous, thoughtful opinions that have
- 6 carefully developed key areas of patent law are no doubt
- 7 well known to everybody here today, but it's his
- 8 participation in the patent law community that reaches
- 9 beyond hearing these cases and writing opinions.
- 10 As shown by his presence today, he has always
- 11 been exceedingly generous in his willingness to speak,
- teach and engage the broader community.
- 13 If you will indulge just a personal note for a
- 14 moment by one of the Judge's former law clerks, I will
- 15 add that his dedication to public service, his
- generosity and his intellectual rigor has always been
- 17 inspiration. Thank you.
- 18 (Applause.)
- 19 CHIEF JUDGE MICHEL: Thank you, and good
- 20 afternoon, everyone. I should probably start by
- 21 explaining two things. One is why I was not here this
- 22 morning. We had a full array of oral arguments in front
- 23 of three panels this morning, so I was busy hearing a
- 24 different form of argument than perhaps occurred here.
- Unfortunately, the same fate awaits this

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 afternoon. We have a special session involving a
```

- 2 portrait presentation for Judge Gajarsa of our court, so
- 3 once again I am going to have to study the record after
- 4 the proceedings close rather than sitting in the back of
- 5 the room as I would have preferred.
- 6 The second explanation is thatto my chagrin, Suzanne
- 7 Michel and I are not related. At least we're not
- 8 related by blood, but we worked together very closely
- 9 and very happily in that wonderful relationship of judge
- 10 and clerk, and I'm very pleased to see several of my
- other devoted law clerks and former law clerks here, so
- 12 hello to Joe Miller and Michelle Lee and Matt Dowd and
- everyone else I might have missed.
- 14 I would like to admit up front two things:
- Number one is that, contrary to popular belief, I do not
- believe that all patent wisdom, patent law wisdom, patent
- 17 policy wisdom or any other kind of patent wisdom resides
- 18 exclusively in the brains of federal judges. In fact, I
- 19 think federal judges should more be thought of as
- 20 students of all of you and you as the teachers than the
- 21 other way around.
- It's a great disappointment in reading petitions
- for en banc re hearings in patent cases to be struck
- 24 again and again in nearly every case with just
- 25 having your own words, maybe not my words, but some

For The Record, Inc.

```
other Judge's words in some opinion thrown back as if
```

- they are perfect, immutable, logical, sensible,
- 3 efficient and all kind of other good things, which of
- 4 course isn't always the case. It isn't necessarily the
- 5 case.
- The other thing by way of preliminaries is that
- 7 I'm going to use a lot of numbers, which I hesitate to
- 8 do, but it's a little bit required. The numbers are
- 9 very, very rough. You'll able to quarrel with some of
- 10 them in terms of precision. It's a matter of trying
- 11 to set the perspective, which I think is so important to
- the ongoing effort of the entire patent community to
- work toward a feasible, realistic, balanced
- improvements. So with that as a warm up, here we go.
- 15 As we all know, the PTO issues tens of thousands
- of patents each year. There are well over a million in
- force today. Many surely contain claims that might be
- 18 thought to be invalid. The vast majority have no
- 19 commercial value and therefore never enforced, so
- they're really no threat to anybody.
- 21 On the other hand, several thousand patents each
- year will be enforced, and by enforced, I mean both in
- 23 what shall I call, threatening letters or, no, we don't
- threaten any more. In any event, informing letters. But
- 25 most particularly, of course, I'm talking about the

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
      filing of lawsuits, so what are those numbers?
 2
              Well, for most of the last decade, a little
 3
      under 3,000 patent infringement lawsuits have been filed
 4
      each year. That's been quite a steady number for the
 5
      better part of a decade so that's kind of our baseline.
 6
              Now, of course in all of those 3,000 cases, the
 7
      validity of the patent is immediately challenged right
      in the answer and on through the litigation. Quite
 8
 9
      often validity doesn't get adjudicated because so many
10
      cases fall out on summary judgments of non-infringement
      based on claim construction, but there still is a fairly
11
12
      substantial number where validity is determined.
13
              It's not at all infrequent to have at least some
14
      of the claims, and they may be the critical ones or maybe
15
      not, declared invalid on any number of grounds, but
16
      most commonly perhaps on the ground of obviousness.
17
              Now, it may be true that as the Federal Trade
      Commission observed in its report now five years in the
18
19
      past that we have a big issue or problem in this country
20
      that you could put under the label of 'patent quality.'
21
              But I suggest that as we move forward into the
22
      seventh inning or round six or the third period or
23
      wherever we are in this patent reform, patent policy
```

24

25

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

debate, that it's worth pausing to consider for just a

minute what do we really mean when we're talking about

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 more patent quality.
```

- 2 Certainly lay people and maybe some lawyers
- 3 could be forgiven if they take that as a suggestion that
- 4 a very large number of patents are just flat-out
- 5 invalid. That is, the entire patent is a piece of junk,
- 6 worth nothing, illicitly granted.
- 7 I've been on the court for twenty years and eight
- 8 months, and I cannot <u>ever</u> remember seeing a single
- 9 patent, I'm sure they're out there, but I can't remember
- 10 seeing one where every single claim was invalid. I've
- seen innumerable patents where some of the broader
- 12 claims either were indefinitely broader or were damn
- 13 close, but in all of those cases, the narrower claims
- 14 seemed to me equally clearly to be plainly valid.
- 15 So what we really have is a problem of some
- 16 over-broad claims getting through the system, slipping
- through the sieve that in the ideal world would catch
- 18 them.
- Now, the other sort of buzz words associated
- 20 with the debate in its earlier stages also strike me as
- 21 not as helpful as they might be, so when we talk about
- 22 patents like 'lacking quality' or patent applications
- 23 lacking quality, I'm not sure how helpful that is.
- If we want to consider the patent system, the
- overall thing, everything, the PTO and the courts and

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 all the other pieces of it, including the roles that all
```

- of you men and women here in this room and your
- 3 counterparts elsewhere play, if we look at that system
- 4 and we ask: Is that system sick, is that system very
- 5 sick, what is the illness of that system, what is the
- 6 right medicine?
- 7 Of course it's a question of diagnosis, so it
- 8 seems to me very important to get the vocabulary
- 9 straight and to sort of get our logic aligned with
- 10 reality. So when we say there are many patents out
- 11 there that are 'questionable,' well, sure, if somebody
- sues on them, the validity will be questioned, probably in
- 13 100 percent of the cases.
- Does that make them really 'questionable' or just
- 15 subject to defenses of he who gets sued? Of course you
- 16 fight back if you get sued, and you say the patent is
- 17 invalid. Maybe it is. Maybe it isn't, 'Questionable'
- isn't the best kind of test.
- Now, as I said, I think that certainly in the
- 20 ideal world, and maybe in the world we actually live in,
- 21 we might be able to expect or assist the Patent Office
- in doing a somewhat better screening job with respect to
- 23 these broader claims that probably shouldn't be allowed.
- Of course, a downstream benefit of that would be
- 25 there might be fewer suits filed. There might be even

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 more suits that would fall out under summary judgment
```

- 2 with greatly reduced costs compared to full trials, but
- 3 it's not sure. It's not certain.
- 4 Like almost everything else in life, you have to
- 5 look at the cost versus the benefit. You have to look
- 6 at trade-offs that inevitably flow from any decision you
- 7 make, in any direction. At least that's the way it looks
- 8 to me.
- 9 So the question then becomes: Can the PTO be
- 10 strengthened enough to provide what I'm going to say are
- the needed rejections of all these over-broad claims and
- the large number of cases? The shallow answer is, well,
- 13 yes, of course. If you spend enough money and hire
- 14 enough examiners and train them well enough and retain
- 15 them with bonuses and supervise them well enough and
- have everything else that you need going, including
- large enough net examiner numbers, you would hope that you
- 18 would be able to do this function of screening out these
- 19 over-broad claims.
- But again there's something of a question in my
- own mind: Would it really work, and would it be
- worth it? And, in any event, is it even feasible? No less
- 23 a leader than Reed Hundt who is associated with the
- 24 president elect's transition team, two years ago, so he
- 25 might not say the same thing today, but two years ago

For The Record, Inc.

```
wrote publicly that he proposed that the Patent Office's
```

- budget be tripled. Tripled.
- Now, I don't object to the idea, but if we step
- 4 back and consider where are we on December 5 of 2008, it
- 5 ain't going to happen. We'll be lucky if the budget
- 6 goes up at all at the Patent Office. It certainly isn't
- 7 going to triple. Obviously the financial crisis, the
- 8 fiscal crisis is going to block that. Beyond that, it's
- 9 not entirely clear, at least it's not clear to me that
- 10 it really would reduce the number of lawsuits filed or
- 11 the number that get past summary judgment or the cost of
- 12 the lawsuits. It might, but it's far from clear to me.
- Then I get to broader questions, like I keep
- 14 hearing that we have a 'litigation explosion' in patent
- 15 infringement cases. I keep hearing that we have lots of
- 16 'wasteful litigation.' I keep hearing we have excesses
- and abuses of certain types of defendants or maybe
- 18 plaintiffs in some of these cases.
- I also read that for quite a number of decades
- 20 now, the percentage of extant patents sued on has
- 21 remained almost exactly the same, at about 1 percent, so
- 22 if you have a lot more patents out there, you would
- 23 expect more lawsuits, and that's exactly what you get.
- Now, of course you can say, yeah, but they're
- 25 all bad patents. Well, maybe or maybe they're partly

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 bad and partly good, so a little hard to be sure.
```

- 2 I'm a skeptic about whether we have an excess amount
- 3 of wasteful litigation or a crisis or a patent litigation
- 4 explosion.
- Now, as you may have heard me already throw out
- 6 the number, about 3,000 patent suits filed a year, but
- 7 the more interesting numbers that start to reduce that
- 8 is that about 90 percent settle voluntarily. Now, of course
- 9 now you may say, but yeah, only under coercion and under
- 10 threats, under a gun at your head. All those kind of
- 11 arguments. Well, maybe. Maybe.
- But 90 percent never go to trial, so when we're
- 13 talking about trial expense, trial delay, not minor
- matters, we're not talking about 90 percent of the
- 15 lawsuits. We're talking about 10 percent of the
- lawsuits. What happens to the 300 that don't fall out
- on voluntary settlements between the parties?
- 18 Well, over two-thirds of them get resolved on
- 19 summary judgment. Now, summary judgment isn't cheap.
- I'm not trying to make that argument, but it's a lot
- 21 less expensive than a full trial, lots less, and much
- 22 faster almost always, not in every case, but normally.
- So now we're down to about a hundred trials per
- 24 year, ball park figure. (All these figures are just ball
- 25 park figures). If we step back and we say, all right,

For The Record, Inc.

```
we're a nation, highly developed, high technological, fully
```

- 2 industrialized advanced nation of 300 million people. We
- 3 have something like a million and a half patents in
- force, and we have what, 30,000 companies in the
- 5 marketplace? I don't even know the exact number, but
- 6 accept the notion that it may be somewhere like 30,000
- 7 players.
- 8 Are a hundred trials excessive in a country of
- 9 that size and that vitality with that many patents
- 10 extant? And what happens when there are trials? Most of
- 11 them get affirmed on appeal. Of course, that also means
- some get reversed, but the numbers again are kind of
- 13 instructive.
- 14 About a third of the hundred tried cases, fully
- 15 tried cases, will get reversed on some basis or other.
- 16 So we got about 30 going back to the trial court, so out
- of that 30, how many actually get retried as opposed to
- settled at that remand stage? I don't have precise
- 19 statistics, but it's very few.
- Let's say it's five or maybe ten, so five or ten
- 21 times we have the ugly circumstance of having to retry a
- 22 case, expensive the first time, going to be expensive
- 23 the second time too, but it happens very rarely, so is
- it really legitimate to say the big problem in the
- 25 system is appellate reversals that require us to go through

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 the horror of a slow, expensive trial twice? Rarely,
```

- 2 rarely.
- 3 So it's out there. It's not negligible, but
- 4 it's a pretty small piece of the problem, it looks like
- 5 to me.
- Now, when we try to focus on 'wasteful,' if the
- 7 courts are able to do screening out and avoiding trials
- 8 in over two-thirds of the cases, that saves a lot of
- 9 money. Now, depending on the complexity of the case,
- 10 even the summary judgment related costs, lawyer fees and
- 11 all the rest, can certainly be considerable.
- 12 Well, I'm not trying to suggest that summary
- judgment is always super fast or always very
- inexpensive. It is, on the other hand, as I've already
- 15 observed, far better than the full trial alternative.
- So then the question for me as a Judge is:
- 17 In the hundred or so cases we're trying a year,
- are we wasting the public resource? The taxpayers'
- money? Are we wasting the money of the combatants, the
- 20 litigants?
- 21 When I look at the cases as they flow through
- 22 the court year after year, my strong impression, and
- 23 that's all it is, it's not scientific, is these tend to
- 24 be the closest, most difficult cases, so if we're trying
- a hundred of the closest cases a year out of 3,000 that

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 are filed, that doesn't sound very wasteful or horribly
```

- 2 inefficient to me. It's not perfect, but it's not
- 3 terrible either. We need to have some kind of sense of
- 4 proportion, I think, if we're going to diagnose the
- 5 illness in the system in a way that will provide
- 6 treatment that will really be meaningful.
- 7 So, of course, the magic bullet is a new kind of
- 8 reexamination in the Patent Office. That's what
- 9 everybody says will solve the problem. Why? It
- 10 will be faster and cheaper than court trials. Well,
- 11 maybe. In the real world, we've got a Patent Office
- 12 that struggles to keep up with its current work.
- 13 What basis would we have for confidence,
- 14 particularly if it doesn't have a tripled budget, that
- 15 it can run in-house what amounts to a court system with
- 16 cross examination and discovery rules and a Judge
- 17 presiding and making fact findings or Administrative
- 18 Patent Judges even trained for this? How hard would it
- 19 be to get them up to speed to function just the way
- 20 District Court Judges do or ITC administrative judges in
- 21 patent cases? I think these are hard questions, and I
- don't think the answers are too obvious, but they
- certainly give me a lot of pause.
- So then when we look at, well, where does the
- 25 litigation process in America start to impose costs that

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 are worth really, really worrying about? Probably we
```

- 2 could all agree, well, at least at the discovery stage.
- 3 There's no other country in the world that forces
- 4 litigants to spend one fiftieth of the money that we force
- 5 litigants to pay routinely with American discovery
- 6 rules.
- 7 Of course, the discovery rules are uniform in
- 8 patent cases and every other type of civil case. They're in
- 9 the civil rules procedure as we all learned in law
- 10 school, so if the discovery costs are viewed as
- 11 unacceptably high, given where our society is, what we
- 12 want, what we value, then it would seem to me the most
- 13 logical, direct solution is to reform the Federal Rules
- of Civil Procedure to change the discovery regime as
- 15 opposed to changing substantive patent law through
- 16 legislative means.
- I'm not against legislation. I think there's a
- 18 place for it. Some things can only be done by
- 19 legislation. I used to work on legislation, so I'm
- 20 hardly an opponent of legislation, but it isn't a magic
- 21 solution. It's not a magic wand.
- Now, certainly the existing reexamination
- 23 process has been less than a stellar success, and it
- 24 certainly doesn't look faster than the courts, as slow
- as the courts are, compared to how they should be. I

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 can't testify about how much cheaper it is, but the
```

- 2 stories I've heard don't sound too encouraging, and then
- 3 there's a big question of: Is it adequately accurate?
- 4 Is it more accurate than what would happen in a well-run
- 5 district courtroom? I'm not sure.
- Now, of course the suggestion is, well, we're
- 7 going to beef it up, we're going to make it work, we're
- 8 going to have a restructured, refinanced PTO that's
- 9 going to be able to do it better, faster, cheaper than
- 10 the courts could.
- 11 Well, we already talked about the budget
- 12 problem. We talked a little bit about the training
- problem, but consider some of the other basic facts of
- 14 life at the PTO. Recent reports suggest that in the
- 15 effort to hire each year a thousand new examiners,
- they're losing 600 for every thousand they hire, so the
- gain is 400, not a thousand per year.
- 18 The salaries are such that in private industry,
- 19 these same young men and women, often engineers, but not
- 20 always, can double or triple their salary the minute
- 21 they walk out of the PTO. That's awfully tempting,
- 22 pretty hard to stem that.
- So what do we have? We have a horrendous
- 24 revolving door. I'm told that the average examiner has
- 25 been in the corps less than three years. Less than three

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 years! That's a horrible fact in this country, even for
```

- 2 our ongoing system of ex parte examination. If
- 3 you try to lay on top of that a new beefed up litigation-
- 4 like re-exam process, are there people there who can do
- 5 it? Can the examiners do it? Can the supervisors do
- 6 it? Even the board is also drowning in
- 7 cases. They've greatly expanded in recent years. I
- 8 think it's somewhere up to in the neighborhood now of 80
- 9 Administrative Patent Judges. What do they need, 160,
- 10 390? No one even knows what they would need to run
- 11 these trials.
- 12 Of course, there are many other suggestions,
- diagnoses by various pretend doctors. One of my good
- 14 friends suggested inequitable conduct, traditionally
- 15 called fraud on the Patent Office, should be
- legislatively removed from the courts altogether and
- 17 put under the PTO, again with a second sort of
- 18 litigation-like system, mini-trials within the PTO.
- 19 I'm not sure they can do it. That is the same
- desperately under-resourced PTO that can't do its
- 21 current job right. Pendencies average three and a half
- years or something like that. In many art groups, the
- 23 average pendency is even longer than that. That's the
- 24 status quo. If you're going to give a whole lot more
- work to those people, I don't know if that makes sense.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Now, of course when you talk about the courts,
```

- 2 their awards, people talk about excess damages.
- 3 Everyone can cite some example of what they consider a
- 4 horrendously excess damage award. A fair number of what
- 5 I've read in print turn out to be nonexistent cases.
- I kept reading about the windshield wiper case
- 7 where the cost of the car was used as the metric of
- 8 damages, but I haven't been able to find such a case.
- 9 And Professors Jaffee and Lerner, who are very highly
- 10 qualified economists, wrote in their book, which many of
- 11 you read, that the courts often give double damages and
- 12 actually cited a case that I was involved in as an
- example of double damages, and they said that I gave
- 14 both lost profit damage and reasonable royalty damages
- 15 to the winning patentee.
- Well, yeah, the Court did. Of course it did,
- 17 because it was for different products and different time
- 18 ranges, two different forms of damages, but they
- 19 weren't -- but that's not double payment. That's paying
- once, so there's a lot of misunderstanding out there.
- 21 There are a lot of apocryphal cases that turn out to not
- really exist, and there are certainly some very large damage
- 23 numbers; no question about that.
- On the other hand, most of those large damage
- amounts involve very large markets, very large profits,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 so we shouldn't be surprised, I wouldn't think.
```

- In any event, a few examples, if they're not
- 3 very representative, hardly prove that excesses are
- 4 common, but that's the charge, that half the time the
- 5 damages are wildly out of proportion to anything that
- 6 would be sustainable in common sense. It's easy to use
- 7 words like 'appropriate.' The FTC talks about whether
- 8 damages are 'appropriate.'
- 9 Well, it's a little bit in the eye of the
- 10 beholder. What you might think was appropriate I might
- 11 think was way too little or way too much, but it's a
- 12 pretty inexact yardstick.
- 13 Then of course you should look at proportions.
- 14 How many really large awards are there? Well, by my
- 15 recollection about five to ten times a year there's an
- award above let's say 50 million dollars, and the rest
- 17 are below that, and the median is something like \$3-5
- 18 million. Does that make out the case that the courts
- 19 are just kind of nuts and excess damages are kind of
- 20 doled out right and left?
- In some of the cases that have been cited as
- having excess damages, it turned out the damages were
- 23 later -- were in the jury verdict and later were sharply
- 24 reduced on post-trial motions by the District Judge as
- 25 the District Judge is required to do, and in some cases

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 modified on appeal, so some of the damage amounts that are
```

- 2 cited as a problem didn't stand.
- 3 So does that prove that the system is sick, or that
- 4 it's actually fairly healthy, and it made the correction
- 5 in the way it's designed to do, post-trial motions if a
- 6 jury makes a terrible mistake?
- 7 Of course one of the most cited examples is the
- 8 RIM settlement. People say, well, RIM was forced to pay
- 9 600 and some million dollars, 612 maybe, if I remember
- 10 the number right, and obviously that's outrageous.
- 11 That's exorbitant. That's just not reasonable. Well,
- 12 I'm not sure by what measure I could opine on whether
- it's reasonable or not.
- I assume given the skill of the actors in that
- 15 case, meaning the businessmen even more than the
- lawyers, that RIM thought it was worth it to pay what,
- of course, on its face is a huge amount of money to get
- 18 a license to continue to operate their system that we
- 19 all use, and probably everybody here has Blackberry in
- their pocket or their pocketbook or somewhere, and they
- 21 earn billions anyhow, so maybe it's excessive, but it's
- 22 not clear to me it's excessive. I'm a bit
- 23 skeptic about that example.
- Then the argument keeps shifting. Well, it's
- 25 not so much the number of infringement suits filed

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 every year, it's who's filing. Well, why should we
```

- 2 assume that a non-manufacturing patent owner shouldn't
- 3 be allowed to enforce its patent? What is wrong with a
- 4 university owning patents based on research of its
- 5 faculty scientists or research institutes or small
- 6 inventors or small innovative companies that either can
- 7 or don't want to try to manufacture products themselves
- 8 but license their inventions so others can make them?
- 9 Well, are these patentees really illegitimate
- 10 somehow? I mean, after all, at least up until now a
- 11 patent has given its owner the right to exclude, not the
- obligation to make. Then some say, well, it's not so
- much the non-practicing entities, it's certain companies
- that don't invent at all, but merely acquire and enforce
- 15 patents, and of course calling them 'trolls' just confuses
- the analysis because obviously a troll is a bad thing.
- 17 It's a pejorative label. (Some people who used to complain
- about trolls allegedly have become trolls).
- 19 But I don't think that it's helpful
- 20 -- it's a slogan. It's a label. It's an excuse
- 21 to not think carefully about the problem, as far as
- 22 I'm concerned. It's like talking about 'questionable
- 23 patents.' It's an excuse to not think carefully about
- 24 the problem as far as I'm concerned. It's like talking
- about questionable patents. It's not helpful if we're

For The Record, Inc.

1 going to try to diagnose the real illness and prescribe

- 2 a useful medicine.
- Besides, patents, like any other form of
- 4 property, the essential element of property is it is
- 5 alienable. You can sell it. You can sell it to anybody
- 6 you want to for whatever price you want to sell it. Why
- 7 should that be prohibited? Why should I be prohibited
- 8 from buying patents if that's what I want to do, whether
- 9 I invented them or not, whether I am going to practice
- 10 them or not, whether I'm a research institution or a
- 11 university or not? There might be some reasons. Maybe
- some of them are good, but it's not self-evident, at
- 13 least not to me.
- 14 Then there's certainly the debate about motives.
- Well, they just want to acquire patents so they can
- 16 squeeze royalties out of infringers. Well,
- 17 yeah. Hey, this is commerce. This is about money.
- 18 This is not an altruistic system.
- The whole constitutional idea was that the
- 20 incentive of monetary gains would motivate innovation at
- 21 a greater rate and to better ends than if the lure of
- 22 money wasn't there, so I'm a little dismayed when I see
- 23 it even creep into footnotes of Supreme Court opinions,
- that certain patentees were just trying to squeeze money
- 25 out of the accused infringer.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              Well, all kinds of patentees are trying to
 2
      squeeze money out of the accused infringer. That's what
      the lawsuit is all about, so come on. Let's be a little
 3
 4
      more adult about it than to worry about the greedy motive
      of the patentee. Of course the patentee is greedy.
 5
 6
      That's the way the system is supposed to work I think.
 7
              I think it's worth noting too that in the five
      full years and the month I guess since the pioneering
 8
 9
      work of the Federal Trade Commission in that first
10
      report, a great many changes have taken place, mostly
      through case law development. A lot of it at the Supreme
11
      Court, some of it at our Court and some elsewhere. But
12
13
      mostly in the courts.
14
              I would suggest to you that for the most part,
      not 100 percent, but 70, 80, 90, we pretty well solved
15
      the problem of strengthening the obviousness standard,
16
17
      making injunctions less routine, less automatic,
      whatever you want to call it, raising the bar on
18
19
      willfulness, restricting patent eligibility under
20
      Section 101.
21
              Beyond those changes, of course, now any and every
      licensee, even in full compliance paying every month,
22
23
      can challenge the validity of the patents that are the
24
      subject of the license, so a whole lot has changed, so
```

For The Record, Inc.

even if the diagnosis in 2003 was perfect, maybe it

25

```
doesn't apply anymore or for the most part doesn't apply
```

- 2 anymore.
- 3 So again, I applaud the FTC for picking up the
- 4 analytical trail and looking for new empirical data and
- 5 bringing in people like all of you here and the stellar
- 6 panelists, and I'm very sorry to have missed these
- 7 panels, but I will read about it later.
- 8 Well, if I think a lot of the challenges that
- 9 were the biggest have been solved and a lot of the
- 10 problems have changed in their complexion, that we have
- 11 a new disease -- the old one has kind of gone away. Maybe
- 12 the immune system took care of it well enough. What remains
- 13 the biggest challenges in terms of improving the patent
- 14 system?
- Well, I would suggest that it's actually a very
- broad, almost philosophical, perhaps metaphysical
- approach, and I would describe it this way. Our goal,
- all of our goals, should be to try to assure that any
- changes in the patent system are defined so that they
- 20 serve all types of inventors, all kinds of companies and
- 21 entities, all technologies and all stages in the life
- 22 cycle of each technology.
- 23 The system, particularly the litigation part of
- 24 it and the Patent Office part of it, certainly should be
- as efficient as is practicable, but it also has to be

For The Record, Inc.

```
fair, and it has to be fair to everyone, and it's never
```

- 2 going to be super efficient. It's just not in the
- 3 nature of patent applications or patent infringement
- 4 lawsuits to be super efficient.
- 5 So if we're going to strive for that, we're just
- 6 going to die trying because it's never going to happen,
- 7 and of course, no system is ever going to be perfect.
- 8 Every system is going to have certain huge costs. Life
- 9 isn't fair. Some litigants are going to have a harder
- 10 time than others, and that will be true if we leave the
- 11 system absolutely unchanged, and it will be equally true
- 12 if we change it a lot. All that will change is who will
- be a little bit disadvantaged, or more than a little bit
- 14 perhaps, and who will be advantaged.
- 15 Of course we talk a lot about predictability,
- and particularly yours truly, but predictability has to
- 17 be counter-weighed against other values: Fairness,
- 18 enough flexibility. I certainly agree with the spirit
- of the KSR ruling that over-simplistic or overly rigid
- 20 rules are to be avoided.
- 21 So I would say we need to try to make sure that
- our reforms avoid categorical rules, rigid rules, overly
- 23 simplistic rules and the like. In other words, they
- 24 need to be thoughtful, modest, calibrated and balanced.
- 25 All right. Well, if those are the goals, do I For The Record, Inc.
 - (301) 870-8025 www.ftrinc.net (800) 921-5555

```
1 have any kind of approach, a sort of overall strategy?
```

- 2 I started by saying I'm quite sure that judges don't
- 3 have all the wisdom on this or even most of it, maybe
- 4 not any of it, but I do think looking ahead to the
- 5 reform efforts and the Congress and the work of the
- 6 Federal Trade Commission, maybe The National Academies
- 7 will get back in the act again as they did the year
- 8 after the 2003 report.
- I don't know, but whoever gets in this game and
- 10 the various coalitions up on the Hill, I would suggest
- 11 to all of us, would-be reformers (and I count myself
- among them), that we ought to carefully
- consider, based on the nature of the precise problem
- 14 we're looking at the moment, which kind of doctor do we
- 15 need? Do we need an orthopedist? Do we need a brain
- surgeon? Do we need an infectious disease doctor?
- Because if we don't match up the right approach
- 18 for what the problem is, we're probably not going to get
- 19 a great outcome, and I would go beyond that to say that
- 20 I think that in the main, except for those things that
- can only be done by legislation, we probably will
- 22 continue to make better progress in the courts,
- 23 particularly those courts that have the most experience
- 24 with patent infringement cases, and through case law
- development, careful, gradual case law development, even

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 more than legislation, even more than overburdening the
```

- 2 PTO or giving it greater powers or requiring that it be
- deferred to, to some extreme degree. The courts are
- 4 probably the best equipped to work on most of these
- 5 problems.
- Now, I entirely agree with the perspective of
- 7 the FTC that competitive interests and consumer wallets
- 8 need protection and deserve protection, and the patent
- 9 system has to coexist with the antitrust law and
- 10 competition law and lots of other laws.
- On the other hand, does it need to be said at
- 12 this season -- and I'm not talking about the holidays,
- 13 I'm talking about what's happening in our economy and
- 14 with the layoffs and with stock prices collapsing -- is
- 15 it too much to ask that our reforms not only net promote
- innovation, but also promote job creation and avoid job
- loss and promote stock values going up instead of
- 18 precipitously down?
- Of course, wealth creation is the ultimate goal
- of the whole thing, and all of these mediations among
- 21 these competing interests require very adroit balancing.
- Now, everybody should make their own choice about who
- 23 they think the best actor is to make rather fine
- 24 balancing decisions among many competing goals, but for
- 25 my own money, putting it in betting terms, I would bet

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 on the courts.
```

- This is what courts do all time. This is what
- 3 courts usually, I think, do pretty well, probably way
- 4 better than Congress, probably way better than an
- 5 administrative agency like the PTO, although they of
- 6 course also have a very big role.
- 7 Now I want to end with sort of a caution, a
- 8 suggestion that all of us, as we pursue what would be
- 9 good recommendations, exercise a lot of discipline on
- 10 ourselves. Shouldn't we have to ensure that remedies
- 11 that we recommend don't just state objectives, but
- define exactly how you're going to get there, with what
- resources and what mechanisms, and at what costs to
- 14 somebody else, to other players, to other industries,
- other technologies, whatever the consideration is?
- Second, if the mechanisms aren't spelled out, is
- 17 the reform real? To say the Patent Office is going to
- invent a great discovery system I think is to talk
- 19 nonsense. The courts have worked on this for over a
- 20 half century with great input of the Congress and the
- 21 Supreme Court, and despite all those decades of efforts,
- 22 we have the discovery system we have now.
- Do we really think the Patent Office, in a short
- space of time, can crack this nut and deliver a great
- discovery system that's really fast, really cheap,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 really fair, really accurate? I don't see how, but
```

- 2 maybe.
- 3 Okay. What other cautions? Look for the
- 4 trade-offs. Look down the road, to the downstream
- 5 effects. Are you sure it's going to really net increase
- 6 innovation if you make this adjustment or that
- 7 adjustment? Is it going to increase jobs or are we
- 8 going to offshore more jobs?
- 9 What about wealth as measured on the stock
- 10 market or as measured in a patent portfolio? Do we
- 11 really want to make changes in the patent system that
- might cut in half the value of every companies' patent
- portfolio or most companies' patent portfolio? Do we
- 14 really want to see stock prices drop in half? Do we
- really want to see more unemployment?
- Those are possible downstream effects of certain
- kinds of changes we could make in the patent system, and
- 18 maybe we should. Maybe there are even higher values
- 19 than those, but those are considerable values. They need
- to be weighed. It's all part of the trade-off analysis.
- 21 Then of course the most obvious of all: Is it
- 22 affordable? If the Patent Office would need a 10
- 23 billion dollar budget, it just isn't going to happen.
- We're just wasting our time talking about it if the
- 25 reform would require that kind of resource.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              So I end with once again applauding the bravery
 2
      I will say and the rigor of the Federal Trade Commission
 3
      to approach these exceedingly difficult problems in such an
 4
      open, transparent way by bringing in all the players,
 5
      putting people who fight with each other in court and
 6
      elsewhere and sometimes on panels in this room. This is
 7
      exactly the right way to do this.
 8
              If this is all done on an ex parte basis in
 9
      Congress or wherever, we're not going to get an optimal
10
      answer because optimal by definition means pretty well,
      almost all the time, for everybody. That's what we need,
11
12
      and we'll never get there unless we include all the
13
      players in a very open process.
14
              So congratulations to the Federal Trade
15
      Commission. Thank you very much.
16
              (Applause.)
17
              MS. MICHEL: I want to thank the Chief Judge
      very much for those comments, always provocative and
18
19
      interesting, and we appreciate your coming down.
20
              We will move on to our next panel, which will be
21
      focusing on patent remedies, so if I could call them up,
22
      thanks.
23
              (Pause in the proceedings.)
24
```

For The Record, Inc.

25

- 1 PANEL 2: RECENT AND PROPOSED CHANGES IN REMEDIES LAW
- 2 MODERATORS:
- 3 SUZANNE MICHEL, FTC
- 4 BILL ADKINSON, FTC
- 5 PANELISTS:
- 6 THOMAS F. COTTER, Briggs and Morgan Professor of Law,
- 7 University of Minnesota Law School
- 8 JOHN R. THOMAS, Professor, Georgetown University Law
- 9 Center
- 10 JOHN SQUIRES, Chief Intellectual Property Counsel,
- 11 Goldman Sachs & Co.
- 12 Q. TODD DICKINSON, Executive Director, American
- 13 Intellectual Property Law Association
- 14 HONORABLE RODERICK R. MCKELVIE, Covington & Burling,
- 15 Former Judge for the United States District Court for the
- 16 District of Delaware
- 17 MR. ADKINSON: Good afternoon. Thanks very
- 18 much. We're rebooted now. My name is Bill Adkinson.
- 19 I'm an attorney with the Policy Studies Group in the
- 20 General Counsel's office.
- Our second panel is going to focus on remedies
- in patent litigation. This morning we heard that the
- damages system was working well and also that it was
- seriously flawed, so that gives us a fair amount of room
- 25 to work with.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              We're going to focus on the recent
 2
      and proposed changes in remedy law, their impact on
 3
      innovation and consumers, and the use of economic analysis
 4
      in determining remedies. We are going to, in
 5
      particular, look at what sort of evidence we should
 6
      consider when granting or denying preliminary
 7
      injunctions, and whether the legal rules for governing
 8
      patent damages result in awards that are appropriate.
 9
              I guess in light of Judge Michel's comment, we
10
      will also consider what sorts of evidence should be
      considered in determining how to evaluate
11
12
      appropriateness, and we're also going to consider
13
      willfulness doctrine and how it is altered behavior.
14
              We're going to have a terrific panel for this.
15
      I'm going to try to do the introductions very quickly.
16
      Professor Tom Cotter is the Briggs and Morgan Professor
17
      of Law at the University of Minnesota Law School where
      he's taught since 2006. He's made a series of
18
19
      contributions to the economic analysis of patent law and
20
      remedies, including a book coauthored with Roger Blair
21
      entitled "Intellectual Property, Economic and Legal
22
      Dimensions of Right and Remedies" published in 2005.
23
              Then Professor Jay Thomas will speak. He's a
24
      professor of law at Georgetown and a visiting scholar at
25
      the Congressional Research Service. In addition to
                          For The Record, Inc.
```

```
1 general articles concerning intellectual property, his
```

- 2 publications include a hornbook and a treatise on
- 3 pharmaceutical patents and a case book and textbook on
- 4 patent law.
- 5 After him, we'll hear from Todd Dickinson, who
- 6 is the executive director of the American Intellectual
- 7 Property Law Association, which is one of the world's
- 8 leading policy and advocacy groups on IP. He previously
- 9 served as Undersecretary of Commerce for Intellectual
- 10 Property, and Director of the USPTO. We heard about
- 11 the enormous job that the PTO has to do for us. He's
- 12 also served as vice president and chief intellectual
- property counsel for General Electric and was a partner
- 14 at Howrey.
- John Squires, who will come next, joined Goldman
- Sachs in 2000 and is presently the firm's first chief
- intellectual property counsel. He has global
- 18 responsibility for IP matters. He co-chairs the
- 19 Securities Industry and Financial Markets Association's
- intellectual property subcommittee, and he's authored
- 21 numerous articles and briefs on these issues.
- Finally, we will hear from Rod McKelvie, who is
- 23 co-chair of Covington & Burling's intellectual property
- litigation practice, and he teaches patent enforcement
- 25 at George Washington. From 1991 to 2002, he served as

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 United States District Court Judge for the District
```

- of Delaware and presided over a number of patent
- 3 infringement cases. He's been named one of the top
- 4 intellectual property lawyers by leading publications.
- 5 So thanks very much. Professor Cotter.
- PROFESSOR COTTER: Thank you. I'm going to try
- 7 to present rather quickly just an overview of patent
- 8 remedies and focus more specifically on three or four
- 9 specific issues within the body of law relating to
- 10 patent remedies, and then hopefully we will have some
- 11 time during the question and answer period to elaborate
- on some of these issues more carefully.
- So let me begin just by setting forth this menu
- 14 of various possible remedies for patent infringement.
- 15 Initially I want to focus on two things in
- 16 particular: Permanent injunctions and ongoing royalties
- 17 as a substitute for injunctive relief.
- 18 You can see from the slide that I'm using the
- terms property rule and liability rule that follows
- 20 terminology developed by Calabresi and Melamed in their
- 21 influential Harvard Law Review article of 1972. We would
- 22 say that a legal entitlement is protected by a property
- 23 rule if the remedy for invasion of that entitlement is a
- 24 right to injunctive relief, a right of exclusion.
- 25 Alternatively, a legal entitlement would be protected by

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 a liability rule if the remedy for invasion of that
```

- 2 entitlement is monetary damages.
- 3 So the question then is: What are the
- 4 advantages and what are the disadvantages of property rules
- 5 versus liability rules, specifically with respect to
- 6 patent infringement?
- 7 I think it's fair to say that the property rule
- 8 entitlement has a number of advantages when we're
- 9 talking about patent infringement: One, just the
- 10 characterization of patent rights as property, according
- 11 to Section 261 of the Patent Act. But more importantly
- from a policy basis, protecting a patent by means of a
- property rule effectively channels the parties, the
- patentee and the would-be user, into private
- 15 transactions.
- The theory would be that the patentee and the
- 17 would-be user have an informational advantage over a
- 18 court or other government entity in estimating the value
- of the patent. They have private information that they
- 20 can use to come up with the terms of a license.
- On the other hand, a court trying to replicate
- or estimate the value of the patent may face higher
- 23 error costs, greater administrative costs.
- 24 Another advantage of a property rule entitlement
- in this context is that the patentee and the would-be

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 user can craft their own remedy, whether that be the
```

- 2 development of a patent pool or creating other types of
- 3 institutions to reduce transaction costs. They can be
- 4 more creative than a court can be.
- 5 Finally, usually we're talking about a
- 6 relatively small number of parties, one of the factors
- 7 that tends to weigh in favor of liability rule
- 8 entitlements is when there are a potentially large
- 9 number of parties. When the number is small, according
- 10 again to the Calabresi and Melamed framework, a property
- 11 rule entitlement may be more sensible.
- 12 That said, there still may be some advantages to
- protecting patent rights by means of a liability rule
- 14 entitlement, at least in certain types of cases, and so
- one traditional rationale for at least occasionally
- departing from the property rule framework would be to
- 17 have this safety valve in place to safeguard the public
- 18 interest.
- So, for example, when the federal government
- wants to use someone's patented technology, for well
- over a hundred years, the government has had the ability
- 22 to do so upon paying just compensation pursuant to
- 23 Section 1498.
- Another debate that's going on in the
- 25 international patent community is the debate over

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 whether developing nations should have the right to
```

- 2 compel the licensing of pharmaceutical patents in order
- 3 to ensure an adequate supply of essential medicine. So
- 4 at least in some contexts, it may make sense to protect
- 5 patent rights by a liability rule as opposed to a
- 6 property rule.
- 7 More recently in this country, the debate has
- 8 centered on patent hold-up, and so one possible reason
- 9 again to depart from the property rule framework would
- 10 be to protect against patent hold-up, which I would
- define in the following terms. I'll come back to this
- again in a few minutes, but when we're dealing with a
- patent on a component, that is to say, some relatively
- 14 small-value aspect of a larger end product, and the
- 15 defendant is infringing that component's patent
- inadvertently, giving rise to surprise, and the hold-up
- 17 value exceeds the inherent value of the technology. For
- 18 example, the cost of switching ex post, once you're
- 19 locked into a particular end product formulation, may
- 20 exceed the ex ante value of designing around. So when
- 21 those conditions are present, it might make sense to
- 22 depart from the property rule framework and opt for a
- 23 liability rule.
- So in terms of the legal doctrine, everyone in
- 25 this audience I'm sure is familiar with the eBay case in

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 which the Supreme Court ruled that the Federal Circuit
```

- 2 rule that the prevailing patentee is entitled to
- 3 injunctive relief absent exceptional circumstances, is
- 4 incorrect, but also the Court, in Justice Thomas'
- 5 unanimous majority opinion, appears to reject any bright-
- 6 line rule that non-manufacturing patentees are never
- 7 entitled to injunctive relief.
- 8 So instead, Justice Thomas says the courts
- 9 should apply this so-called traditional four-factor test
- 10 focusing on whether the plaintiff can show irreparable
- 11 harm, no adequate remedy at law, that the balance of
- hardships favors the entry of injunctive relief, and
- that the public interest would not be disserved by the
- 14 entry of injunctive relief.
- 15 A couple concurring opinions: The Roberts'
- 16 concurring opinion suggesting that maybe *eBay* doesn't
- 17 really change very much in the vast majority of cases;
- 18 the Kennedy concurring opinion perhaps arguing for a
- 19 greater role for compulsory licensing.
- The question of interest today I think is how
- 21 the court should go about interpreting eBay, what are we
- seeing so far, and where should the law be headed. I
- 23 think some of the lower courts, I think correctly, have
- interpreted *eBay* as discarding the presumption of
- 25 irreparable harm, and many of the district courts, as we

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 heard this morning, seem much less inclined to grant
```

- 2 injunctions with respect to non-manufacturing patentees.
- I think the interesting policy question we
- 4 should be focusing on though is: What factors should
- 5 the courts be looking to for guidance in determining
- 6 when to opt for the damages remedy only. And I would
- 7 suggest here that where a lot of the research and
- 8 discussions should be headed is: What sort of factors
- 9 are good proxies for the existence of patent hold-ups,
- so can we identify and isolate certain factors to look
- 11 for in determining whether the threat, the risk of
- 12 patent hold-up is substantial or not?
- There's an interesting recent article by
- 14 Denicolo, Padilla, Layne-Farrar, and Geradin that
- 15 actually goes into some detail, coming up with a variety
- of factors that should be present for patent hold-up to
- exist, and I think that's where the research ought to be
- 18 going.
- Other factors that may play a role in some other
- cases, I'm listing up there, and I think we do have to
- 21 be cognizant of the possibility that if we abandon
- 22 injunctive relief in too broad a swath of cases, we
- 23 could actually be in violation of TRIPs Article 28.
- In terms of procedural issues, some recent
- 25 Federal Circuit case law suggests that in a case in

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 which a Court decides not to award injunctive relief, it
```

- 2 may be preferable to have the parties try to craft their
- 3 own compulsory license before the Court weighs in, and
- 4 I'm still trying to sort through whether that makes
- 5 sense, but I think there is a risk here.
- In those cases -- and it may be a small number
- 7 of cases, but in those cases in which the Court has
- 8 decided that injunctive relief is not appropriate,
- 9 perhaps due to the risk of patent hold-up, I wonder if
- 10 then asking the parties to craft their own damages
- 11 remedy in effect just restores the risk of patent
- 12 hold-up being exercised. I'm not sure this is the right
- 13 approach in this type of case.
- 14 I think there's also a substantial question as
- 15 to whether there's a right to a jury trial on the amount
- of the ongoing remedy. The Federal Circuit has held
- that there is not, but I'm not sure that the analysis
- 18 fully grapples with this body of law dealing with the
- 7th Amendment. I think it's an issue that we may have
- 20 to confront more deeply.
- On the questions of damages, I'll skip the
- 22 provisions here of the Patent Act, again I assume some
- 23 familiarity with this, and just focus briefly on the
- 24 theory, damages theory and how closely does the law of
- 25 damages conform to the theory.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              My own proposal, which is based on a series of
 2
      papers I've coauthored with Roger Blair over the years,
 3
      is that we should start with a baseline assumption that
 4
      patent damages should render the patentee no better off,
      and also no worse off, than the patentee would have been
 5
      but for the infringement, and that departures from that
 6
 7
      baseline may sometimes be necessary to avoid the risks
 8
      of either over or under-deterrence. In terms of lost
 9
      profits damages, that would mean restoring the patentee
10
      to the position it would have occupied but for the
11
      infringement.
12
              In terms of reasonable royalties, again this
      theory would suggest that the ideal measure of
13
14
      reasonable royalties would be to replicate the bargain
15
      the parties themselves would have struck ex ante,
16
      assuming patent validity and infringement. You need
17
      that assumption in order to avoid a double-discounting
      problem, which I can elaborate on, if necessary, during
18
19
      the question and answer period.
20
              That hypothetical bargain then should wind up
21
      reflecting the expected value of the patented technology
22
      in comparison to the next best alternative, again
23
      possibly subject to some adjustments in order to avoid
24
      either over or under-deterrence.
25
              So where is the law currently? I think the law
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

```
of lost profits is actually pretty much in conformity
```

- 2 with what our theory suggests, particularly the Rite-
- 3 Hite case, in which the court seems to opt for this but-
- 4 for analysis.
- 5 In terms of reasonable royalties, I think it's
- 6 less clear, and a few problems that I think are
- 7 currently at play with respect to the law of reasonable
- 8 royalties. One is that some recent Federal Circuit
- 9 opinions state that reasonable royalties may exceed the
- 10 amount the parties would have negotiated ex ante or even
- 11 the defendant's entire expected profit from the use of
- 12 the patent. I question what the logic of that value
- would be since, by definition, this measure would exceed
- 14 anything that the parties would have actually negotiated
- in the real world.
- 16 The other bone of contention is this whole issue
- 17 of whether the royalty base should be the entire market
- 18 value of the final product. We heard some discussion of
- 19 that this morning, and so one issue is this: Is this
- 20 basically a reasonable proxy for the ideal of trying to
- 21 replicate what the parties themselves would have come to
- because in reality we may not be able to replicate that
- 23 bargain very carefully or very, very well?
- So is using the expected market value -- the
- 25 expected market -- the entire market value of the final

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 product a good enough proxy, assuming you use the right
```

- 2 royalty rate in connection with that royalty base? Or is
- 3 this bad policy because for whatever reason, it risks
- 4 inflating the value of the patent in comparison to the
- 5 next best alternative?
- Then a third question, really an institutional
- 7 question is: Even if, in theory, there is some better
- 8 way of valuing, of estimating the reasonable royalty, is
- 9 it worth the cost? Would we be gaining very much in
- 10 terms of more accuracy, and would that be cost justified
- if we adopt more complex methods for calculating
- reasonable royalties as was suggested in some of the
- 13 versions of the Patent Reform Act that were before
- 14 Congress last year?
- Then in terms of enhanced damages, I'll leave
- 16 that to Judge McKelvie to talk about that, but again the
- 17 question is whether the *Seagate* case more closely aligns
- 18 the legal standard now with the underlying rationale for
- 19 enhanced damages, again that rationale being to bring a
- 20 greater level of optimal deterrence, avoiding both under-
- 21 and over-deterrence of patent infringement, and I'll
- 22 stop there.
- 23 MS. MICHEL: Thanks, Tom, very much. We will
- 24 hear from Jay Thomas next.
- 25 PROFESSOR THOMAS: Thanks a lot for having me

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 here, and it's always a delight to speak to such a
```

- 2 distinguished audience and be on such an impressive
- 3 panel.
- I saw a few of you I think across the street at
- 5 Georgetown for lunch, and I hope that the fine offerings
- of our salad and taco bar were not overly off-putting. I
- 7 think I also see a few Georgetown law students here
- 8 today, which I find fairly shocking, and I just want to
- 9 warn you that none of this is on the exam, so there's
- 10 not much reason to be here, but for that fact.
- 11 Let me also note, Professor Cotter is a tough
- 12 act to follow because Tom's been really a leading light
- in the profession in dealing with remedies. He's
- 14 someone who recognized their importance a long time ago.
- 15 Recent events have focused a lot of attention on patent
- remedies, there's much more demand for precision
- 17 remedies in the damages sphere than before.
- Part of that is, of course, the increasing
- 19 attractiveness of the patent system. Part of it is
- 20 expanded efforts to obtain value from patents through
- 21 new or at least expanded industrial models, and indeed a
- third model is of course the eBay case. After eBay,
- 23 courts can no longer rely upon the notion that a
- 24 permanent injunction is inevitable and the parties will
- 25 simply bargain away prospective royalties.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 They must look -- provide forward looking
```

- 2 remedies in many cases -- and of course they have to
- 3 confront the reality of trying to set royalties and
- 4 other damages amounts. That makes it much more
- 5 difficult and puts a lot of attention on how little we
- 6 know about how to assess patent damages.
- 7 Here's Judge Rich from his well known line from
- 8 Application of Kirk, his dissenting opinion. He speaks
- 9 to the legal beauties of a system where the marketplace
- 10 automatically values patents based on the value of the
- 11 inventive contribution.
- Well, the quotation is accurate to an extent.
- 13 It's accurate to the extent that it does speak to the
- 14 patent system as the least expensive alternative to
- 15 other options as an innovation engine, for example, a
- 16 prize system. Of course, that's an unusual observation
- today as prize systems seem to be picking up. There are
- more prizes it seems out there for technical
- 19 contributions than there were before.
- The notion, which is really black letter law for
- 21 generations of patent attorneys -- this quotation is in
- 22 many of the case books and has been in many of the case
- 23 books -- it's very much lacking. It doesn't evince the
- 24 fact that patents are unique intangibles that are among
- 25 the most difficult entitlements to evaluate.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 How do we do it?
```

- We have elaborate models based on cost
- 3 reduction, cost of substitution, innovation, advanced
- 4 income streams, but these things are very difficult to
- 5 pull off, and cost members of industry a great deal of
- 6 time and effort.
- Also, to say that the market evaluates the patent
- 8 really misstates the matter, because the market doesn't
- 9 value patents abstractly. It values patents based on
- 10 what courts say the patents are worth, so courts can't
- 11 look to the market. Jurists have to look to themselves
- 12 to evaluate patents first, and the market will follow,
- so having a market-based valuation is simply circular
- 14 and misleading. Again, courts must do the work on their
- own.
- In addition, the quotation says, Well, the value
- 17 is based on what the patentee brings. In part it is,
- 18 but patent value can be based on exogenous factors. It
- can be based on who owns the patent, who owns other
- 20 patents that may be out there. Other laws, for example,
- 21 FDA marketing approval, may limit the value of what the
- 22 patentee has brought. Even consumer and manufacturer
- lock-in.
- 24 So it seems just this basic quotation that
- 25 informed patent valuations for decades is really subject

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 to doubt in view of current circumstances. We have to
```

- 2 think about this further.
- 3 What are some of the informing principles?
- We've heard a lot about them already today.
- 5 Administerability is one. We don't want courts to have
- 6 to spend an overly excessive amount of time, in view of
- 7 their other obligations, to resolve patent damages.
- 8 Again patents can account for external -- patent
- 9 remedies and damages in particular can account for
- 10 external factors. For example, do we want to not
- discriminate against or should we in fact privilege
- 12 certain patent exploitation models? For example, the
- 13 current damages scheme, as most of you know, does not
- 14 allow disgorgement as a remedial measure. It gives lost
- 15 profits, but only for patent providers who are in direct
- 16 competition with the adjudicated infringer.
- 17 In a sense that privileges an exploitation
- 18 model over a non-exploitation model, or can be viewed as
- doing so. Is that something we should sustain or further?
- Is that something we should avoid? We've heard already
- 21 about encouraging private bargaining. Certainty of
- remedies is said to encourage private bargaining because
- 23 it allows members of industries to act in the shadow of
- 24 the law.
- However, too much certainty can often encourage

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 aggressive behaviors. At least that's the theory of one
```

- of concurring opinions in the Supreme Court in the eBay
- 3 case. An automatic right to an injunction in every case
- 4 would encourage aggressive trolling practices, according
- 5 to one of the Supreme Court opinions. We ought not to
- 6 allow that. We ought to put a little play in the joints
- 7 to soften behaviors of rights-holders.
- 8 Deterrence, there's the notion I've heard from
- 9 several people, a very memorable quotation from a
- 10 colleague here that, why should anyone put a quarter in
- 11 the parking meter if the fine's a quarter? Why should
- the damages just be what we would privately negotiate?
- Of course, that view, though it's very intuitive
- and strong, perhaps there's some other
- 15 influences, and one might be the notion that we rely on
- 16 accused infringers to clean out invalid patents from the
- 17 public rolls, so we need that incentive for them to be
- 18 willing to litigate, even if sometimes they're wrong.
- 19 Also we need flexibility in our damages
- 20 principles because market structures and technologies
- 21 differ, and we want to be able to apply future learning
- 22 readily.
- 23 So looking at some of those background
- 24 principles, what are some of the current issues that
- some of us perceive are problematic? Well, as we know,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 reasonable royalties are commonly determined through a
```

- 2 hypothetical negotiation framework. One of the big
- 3 questions now is: Is that framework essentially
- 4 useless? It may be useless in part because courts
- 5 commonly discard the framework when they don't feel it's
- 6 appropriate. What is it really adding to other
- 7 sorts of factors?
- 8 Courts commonly disregard this construct when
- 9 they face who they regard as strident patent owners --
- 10 patent owners who would never settle under any
- 11 circumstances -- so they simply throw it out and embrace
- negotiations that don't allow the infringer any room for
- 13 profit.
- 14 They say it's a legitimate prospect to allow
- 15 infringers to negotiate patent deals that would leave
- them at a loss for each and every unit that they sell.
- 17 So we see a lot of cases, and I just picked a couple
- 18 cases. I've written works that talks about other
- 19 opinions. One recent case, Mitutoyo, the royalty is the
- 20 entirety of the infringer's profit. The reasonable
- 21 royalty is in fact a prohibited grant of damages under
- 22 our Patent Act, which makes it a disgorgement measure of
- lost profits.
- 24 Congress allowed that measure for design profits
- but not utility patents that's allowed by the courts

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 under the guise of a reasonable royalty, so in effect
```

- 2 the courts have expressly disregarded Congressional
- 3 instructions over the royalty rate.
- We also have Monsanto v. McFarling, one of the
- 5 notorious bag-tag cases where the damages exceeds the
- 6 price of the product, not to mention profits, well over
- 7 the price of the product. And of course that's a case in
- 8 view of Quanta, but I'm not even sure the patent right
- 9 extends that far to descendants of seeds that were
- 10 originally sold.
- 11 So I believe there are some problematic cases,
- 12 but certainly it's correct that there are some cases
- that are resolved, apportionment of royalties and
- 14 reasonably royalties, fairly. And I do believe there is
- 15 room for disagreement about the extent of the problem,
- and that's a contribution that the FTC can well make.
- 17 What we do know is the average royalty award is
- 18 over 13 percent. By itself that number doesn't have a
- 19 ton of meaning. If the profit rate in one industry is
- 70 percent, 13 percent doesn't seem that bad. However,
- 21 we know the profit rates are not that high in most
- 22 industries. They're substantially lower.
- 23 Certainly when I was in practice the industries
- I dealt with, if I had come back to my client with a 13
- 25 percent royalty settlement, I would have been in academia

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 years before I actually joined, okay? They wouldn't
```

- 2 have had me any longer than that, so it's a rate that
- 3 seems high, but again I think more work could be done on
- 4 the basis for comparison.
- 5 How about lost profits? Interesting strains of
- 6 thought here. Remember that lost profits aren't
- 7 available unless we have a case of direct competition.
- 8 Some scholars like Professor Lemley think that in fact
- 9 it may be too difficult to show lost profits. That's
- 10 why we're having contortions on the legislative minimum
- showing of reasonable royalties, why they're not often
- that reasonable on further observation, and why we
- ought to make lost profits more broadly available.
- 14 It's important to note though by rejecting
- 15 disgorgement and requiring the legal damages of lost
- 16 profits, that Congress has said effectively that lost
- 17 profits -- the damages for patent infringement -- are going
- 18 to exceed the gains.
- 19 That's often the case due to the impacts of
- 20 competition, and the notion of consumer surplus. That's an
- 21 impact -- the damages regime has tremendous impact on our
- 22 public health system because it strongly discourages
- 23 generic applicants from competing because their damages
- 24 may be much greater than any profits they gain under the
- 25 Hatch-Waxman regime. It's something that again has

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 tremendous influences just on the public health system,
```

- 2 not to mention other innovative industries.
- 3 Apportionment remains one the big topics for
- 4 debate. Apportionment is part of our law. It stands
- 5 among the *Georgia Pacific* standards. Many of us believe
- 6 that it's been unevenly applied, and when it's been so,
- 7 implicates the same policy rationales that patent claim
- 8 scope does.
- 9 Why are we so concerned about construing claims
- 10 accurately, having claims scope precisely defined over
- 11 the prior art, if at the remedial phase it's of little
- 12 value?
- 13 The entire market value rule, too, means that this
- 14 patent, if it's found to be the entire market value of
- 15 the competing device, it means there can only be
- one such reward, that the infinger has nothing left, and if
- 17 that if the product infringes in the future, the patentee
- should go -- the subsequent follow-on patentee should go
- 19 not to the infringer but to the original claimant and
- 20 seek a portion of its damages.
- 21 Well, I'm running out, but let me just note
- 22 that: What are some problems that the FTC might
- 23 productively engage in or we all can think about? One
- 24 thing is like the patent system itself, patent damages
- are incompletely theorized. We don't know much about

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 patent damages, and we haven't thought much about how
```

- 2 damages pair with different aspects of the patent system
- 3 in terms of its goals.
- 4 The thing is the patent system is not just
- 5 about one goal. It's about incenting innovation. It's
- 6 about incenting disclosure. It's about encouraging
- 7 investment. It's about breaking the Schumpeterian form of
- 8 vertical integration. Whichever one of those goals
- 9 you privilege would influence which remedial scheme you
- 10 might adopt.
- I certainly would know we have a growing
- 12 availability of empirical studies. Houston and Stanford
- are getting more numbers down, but often those are just
- 14 reports of numbers. Someone is going to have to crunch
- 15 them. We need to recognize structural limitations.
- The courts, in view of some, may be the superior
- 17 actor for deciding these issues. The difficulty is, at
- the appellate bench level especially, given the short
- amount of appellate time for appellate advocacy and
- 20 brief limits, most litigants, of course, are going to
- 21 try to defeat the judgment generally by saying that the
- 22 patent would have been obvious or we don't infringe.
- They're not going to argue about the damages
- 24 award. That's often an afterthought, and damages are
- 25 not often properly framed before the Federal Circuit.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Finally, let me note that solutions to damages
```

- 2 problem may lie outside remedies law. The expansive
- 3 ability of patentees to claim as they wish may, in fact,
- 4 be a better source of concern in this arena.
- 5 Let me close again by thanking you for your
- 6 patience, and I look forward to further discussion in
- 7 months to come. Thank you again.
- 8 MS. MICHEL: Thank you, Jay, and thank you very
- 9 much for the suggestions of what we should be thinking
- 10 about as we move forward in this project. We welcome
- 11 that kind of input from all our panelists and from all
- of you. I'll keep putting in a plug for, send us
- 13 comments.
- MR. DICKINSON: Don't worry.
- 15 MS. MICHEL: We will read them all I promise.
- 16 MR. DICKINSON: You asked for it. Hi. I'm Todd
- 17 Dickinson. I'm here, and I'm invited maybe because I
- 18 can't keep a job. I've had a number of experiences over
- 19 the last decade or so that I think hopefully give some
- 20 perspective on this today. I am currently the
- 21 executive director of the AIPLA, and so while I'm not
- literally speaking for them today, obviously a lot of
- 23 the comments that I'm going to make are reflective of
- them and their policies and also perhaps more
- importantly, the constituency they represent.

For The Record, Inc.

```
We have about 16,000 attorneys and agents.
 1
 2
      represent clients on all aspects and all sides of these
 3
      issues, and we care deeply about the system, so
 4
      hopefully these comments will be constructive.
 5
              Also as was mentioned, I was the director of the
 6
      USPTO too, and the number of the challenges and the
 7
      number of perhaps the solutions that we're going to talk
 8
      about may also lie there. Many of what we're talking
 9
      about in the remedies area, big R remedies, discussions
10
      particularly around patent reform legislation are
      focusing on perhaps the end of that process, litigation.
11
12
              I think we're starting to see the beginning of a
13
      discussion that says maybe we should also be focusing,
14
      maybe preferentially focusing on the front end of that
15
      process, helping reform and resource issues at the PTO.
16
              Just a little bit on that: There's a couple
      studies coming out or have come out showing the
17
18
      magnitude of the increasing problem. Let me see if I
19
      can get my slides up to by the way. No?
20
              I'm going to stop right there for a split
21
      second. When I came into the office about a decade ago,
      I used to give speeches talking about the horrendous
22
23
      problems facing the office because their workload had
24
      doubled. The budget had doubled, but the hiring had to
```

For The Record, Inc.

double, and it was an increasing management challenge.

25

Now, a decade later, the budget has doubled, but

1

19

```
2
      the workload has more than doubled. The number of
 3
      applications coming in has doubled. Pendency has gone
 4
      up from 24 months from the first office action, 24 to 32
 5
      months. It's been reported publicly by the office that
 6
      if you file an application in the health insurance
 7
      business methods 7054, you will get a first office
 8
      action in nine years. That's a problem.
 9
              Let me first thank the FTC for holding these
10
      hearings. This is I think some measure, a follow onto
11
      the very good work that was done again almost a decade
12
      ago. I had a chance to testify back then a couple
13
      times, and I appreciate the chance to be here again
14
      today.
15
              One of the comments that came out of the report
16
      that I used to make and sort of tweak Suzanne and Bill
17
      and their colleagues was all the evidence they were
      collecting seemed pretty anecdotal. They replied, Well,
18
```

20 empirical, okay, but let me perhaps suggest that I know

if you get enough anecdotal evidence, it becomes

- 21 other speakers, and I know others have, that maybe
- there's also room for good some empirical studies in
- this area as well, since that time has passed.
- Also let me start off by saying I have like 40
- 25 slides in five minutes, so I will move through them

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 pretty quickly and hopefully stand with the record. Let
```

- 2 me thank my good friend and colleague, Steve Kunin
- 3 who has helped me with the slides and who
- 4 also was my colleague at the PTO.
- 5 As I'm sure many of the people have said, the
- 6 concerns regarding the inadequacies that we're talking
- 7 about have been addressed since that time, since the
- 8 2003 FTC report, in various ways but particularly through
- 9 the courts. I think the Supreme Court certainly sent
- 10 the signal on a number of issues, but that signal has
- been picked up I think very affirmatively by the Federal
- 12 Circuit.
- 13 You heard the Chief Judge a minute ago. He's
- 14 been, I think many people, know in particular saying, Give
- 15 us even more cases to take up some of these issues.
- I think given the mechanisms for reform, I think people
- are taking a good hard look at where that's a continuing
- 18 good option.
- A lot of what he said, by the way, if you will
- 20 accept my apology, I don't usually quote Rush Limbaugh,
- 21 but I would say ditto to what the Chief Judge said in
- large part. I think he's had a long experience, and I
- think in many cases he is making good recommendations.
- 24 Again just quickly, we've seen these four basic
- 25 categories or types of remedies. I think I'm not going

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 to go into quite as much as Professor Cotter did about
```

- 2 the specifics of them. They're in here.
- 3 What I'll probably touch on is some of the
- 4 impact and some of the policy, political reform nexus
- 5 that some of them have given rise to and how that
- 6 complicates the challenges that we have in crafting
- 7 remedies going forward. I know we have good friends
- 8 from the legislature here and from the Congress here
- 9 today.
- 10 Having been involved in this now for three or
- four or five years, I don't envy their task. One of the
- 12 challenges they faced of course is that everybody is
- 13 extremely passionate, turns out to be passionate about
- 14 these issues, amazingly, and that passion translates into
- 15 pretty strong rhetoric. So one thing I hope we get
- through and I hope the FTC facilitates is cutting
- 17 through a lot of the rhetoric and getting to the meat of
- 18 the matter.
- 19 Again back in 2003 almost every permanent
- 20 injunction was granted. I think we know that. There
- 21 were concerns though, as was discussed this morning and
- I know a lot, this issue of non-practicing entities
- 23 giving rise to a distortion of the system, and so the
- 24 eBay case, which in the reform debate, the reform debate
- 25 and legislatively, injunctions was far more provocative,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 far more heated for a period of time than even damages
```

- 2 is today.
- Then the Supreme Court takes *eBay*, and I have to
- 4 disclaim I was a witness in the eBay, so a little
- 5 disclaimer upfront, and all of the tension, all of the
- 6 stress seems to go out. Everybody seems to feel that
- 7 Justice Souter hit it right down the middle on that one,
- 8 and maybe he did.
- 9 We're seeing it evolve as I think
- 10 several speakers have mentioned. Non-practicing
- 11 entities in particular are learning to live with it.
- 12 Others who are technically I quess non-practicing
- entities have got to figure out how to, and that's where
- 14 I think we're going to see -- hopefully see a little
- more flexibility in the system.
- 16 Universities are a good example. Research
- 17 institutions. There are commercial entities who are not
- 18 just gathering patents for the sake of gathering them
- 19 and licensing them, but whose business is licensing
- 20 them. We have representatives that I know are here in
- 21 the room today from those companies, and I think they
- 22 should have a fair shot at convincing us that their
- 23 business models is also deserving of this, even though
- they don't technically make the product.
- The result is they're no longer automatically

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 granted. They do require this equities balancing,
```

- which seems fair enough. This probably
- 3 will affect the probability of settlement.
- Another area that wasn't talked about too much,
- 5 let me just get my water -- wasn't talked about too much
- is the effect on declaratory judgment actions. Now,
- 7 traditionally you can get a declaratory judgment,
- 8 can initiate a declaratory judgment, if you feel, within
- 9 limited circumstances, that you've been directly
- 10 threatened by a patentholder.
- 11 There's some advantages of bringing that action,
- of course, procedurally. But the limits of that threat,
- 13 the perceived threat have been tested, and the Supreme
- 14 Court fairly recently in the MedImmune case clarified it.
- What's been the impact of that?
- 16 Well, the Federal Circuit is going to take that
- 17 up to delineate what the boundaries of that are. That
- 18 was kind of a case that came in a little under
- 19 the radar, but I think is getting a little more focus
- 20 now because of the impact of loosening how those actions
- 21 can be brought.
- It will hopefully remove more business
- 23 uncertainty because it gives the opportunity as a
- 24 mechanism for cleaning out some of the underbrushes.
- We're talking about a lot of mechanisms for dealing with

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 patents which perhaps should not have been granted in
```

- 2 the first place or were too broad or lower quality. Yet
- 3 here's one more mechanism among a number that we've
- 4 talked about that have evolved in this last decade that
- 5 can be helpful in doing that. The Federal Circuit has
- 6 enumerated several types of behavior that can give rise
- 7 to it. They're a little different than they were in the
- 8 past.
- 9 There seemed to be -- there was a lot of worry
- 10 right after that decision was granted of whether that
- would lead to there being no way to avoid declaratory
- 12 judgment. I don't think it's played out that way. I
- think most observers will say the Federal Circuit, as
- 14 they traditionally do, began to shape, delineate, bring
- 15 into focus when it can be used and when it cannot be
- 16 used. As it says here a very careful factual analysis
- 17 is always important, and it will continue to evolve
- 18 further as we get more refinements.
- 19 Part of the challenge I think we have, and I'm
- 20 speaking personally, is back to this rhetorical
- 21 question: Probably this is also part of
- 22 my experience at GE and other places where we had
- 23 technologies at each end of the spectrum, and we needed
- 24 to have careful balance.
- We need to watch the rhetoric. We need to make

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 sure that the reality matches the problem, and the
```

- 2 reality certainly matches any proposed solution.
- 3 I've heard the sky is going to fall in too many
- 4 times, and when it hasn't fallen in, to not be a little
- 5 skeptical of that. On the other hand, as Chief Judge
- 6 Michel certainly said, this system is too critical, too
- 7 critical to the economic development of this country and
- 8 certainly the future economic development of this
- 9 country, to tinker with theoretically. We need to make
- 10 sure what we're doing has a great basis in fact.
- 11 The issue of willful infringement. Again
- traditionally there's a lot of concern about willful
- infringement, a lot of concern about the enhanced
- 14 damages that flow from that. There was a desire for
- 15 reform. We actually heard that in a couple cases
- starting with an en banc in *Knorr-Bremse*, and
- 17 then the Seagate case. They actually basically reversed
- 18 the *Underwater Devices* limited duty of
- care, and established the objective recklessness
- 20 standard. Again like these others, a theme is
- 21 working it's way. The sky didn't fall in.
- Someone is going to talk, speaking to the young
- 23 man out there, we were talking about interrupting Chief
- Judge Michel. I said, Don't do that, you're a law
- 25 student. The first thing I learned is never interrupt a For The Record, Inc.

```
1 judge. The second thing is always agree with a judge
```

- when you can, so even though Rod is no longer a judge,
- 3 I'll agree with a lot of recommendations he's going to
- 4 make here in a second, even though he hasn't made them
- 5 yet. I thought he was going to go ahead of me. Sorry.
- 6 So what are the consequences? Harder to obtain
- 7 injunctions, harder to obtain damages. The recent state
- 8 of 101 cases brings into question whether this expanding
- 9 patentability that we've given -- usually taken a lead
- on globally in the United States -- is now in question.
- How is that going to affect damages, the
- 12 royalty? We'll see. I think we'll see is the question.
- 13 Well, that's what we're here for. These are some of the
- 14 questions we have to consider: What are the remaining
- 15 problems, what are the best approaches, and if you have
- 16 a legislative stalemate in particular, which has been a
- 17 major problem, a major challenge, let's say because the
- forces seem to be balanced very interestingly, and while
- 19 the debate tends to be framed as oh, high tech versus
- 20 bio pharma, it's not anywhere near that simple.
- 21 Where you stand on all these many issues, the
- 22 alliances ebb and flow, form and reform. So the
- 23 complexities of having to do this whole package
- legislative are great, so some have suggested maybe some
- of those issues like damages and inequitable conduct,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 both of which are made by the courts, the reform might
```

- 2 be best left to the courts.
- 3 Others are going to talk a lot about damages, so
- 4 I won't spend a lot of time on it in my remarks other
- 5 than to comment on again this issue of how the debate is
- 6 played forward, and I want to frame one thing. Jay
- 7 Thomas, Professor Thomas has an excellent paper on the
- 8 impact of Georgia Pacific, can judges and juries get it
- 9 right?
- 10 A good colleague of mine both at Howrey and
- 11 formerly AIPLA president, Bill Rooklidge put out a paper
- saying roughly the opposite. That's not to say they
- were both wrong or right. It's to I think highlight the
- 14 fact and the challenge in figuring out from currently
- 15 available data just what the right -- first of all, the
- 16 problem, then to figure out what the right solution is.
- 17 It's true. The high tech community is plaqued
- 18 by non-practicing entities in certain ways. It's true,
- 19 non-practicing entities, in certain cases, have figured
- out a business model that's appropriate under the law to
- 21 make some buck, and their shareholders made zero
- 22 value.
- It's true that biotech and pharma need
- 24 significant protection because their business model will
- 25 rise or fall. It's not a matter of just getting hit for

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 a large amount of damages impact. Their companies may
```

- 2 fail. Balancing all these out, that's what we're here
- 3 for, but it's very, very difficult.
- 4 These are some of the observations. I need to
- 5 wrap up, so maybe we can get to them in the questions.
- 6 I mentioned Chief Judge Michel. Legislative actions,
- 7 here are some suggestions: Post grant review, become
- 8 more of a controversial question.
- 9 Interestingly enough, this is the cornerstone in
- 10 many ways of the FTC's recommendations and the DOJ's
- 11 recommendations, but we have struggled to try to figure
- out exactly how to do this post-grant review process.
- 13 There are a lot of subissues in it, second window. For
- 14 example, there's a lot of consensus around first window,
- doing it for a brief period of time after a patent
- 16 issues.
- 17 Second window, very difficult. The House tried
- 18 to, in their work, reform inter partes reexamine. That
- may be an appropriate way to go, but we're starting to
- see inter partes re-exam. People are saying, Oh, it's
- 21 great, people are using it. Some of the current
- 22 anecdotal evidence data suggests they're using it for
- 23 tactical reasons to prolong litigation and to draw the
- things out as opposed to the reason it was proposed
- 25 initially, and what oppositions was proposed for which

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 is to reduce the need for litigation and reduce the
```

- 2 cost.
- 3 So we have to watch that too. The law of
- 4 unintended consequences is probably the law where I got
- 5 most of this.
- 6 Let me thank you. Let me make one final quick
- 7 comment about the USPTO. As I said, I think that one
- 8 of the things that should -- that the FTC may take even
- 9 further view on and testimony on is how some of what we
- 10 regard as remedies might be affected positively, little
- 11 R remedies, by a closer and more resource-driven focus on
- the front end of the process and reforming PTO.
- 13 And I noticed Herb Wamsley and Steve and I and a
- 14 number of former executives at the PTO have come
- 15 together and are putting out a report under the aegis of
- 16 the U.S. Chamber of Commerce which addresses a lot of
- 17 these reforms. I know the new administration will take
- 18 a careful look at it, and the PTO will.
- 19 Substantively, I think a great development -- the
- 20 PTO, as I understand it, has advertised for a chief
- 21 economist, and I think one of the things, they've had a
- 22 challenge in the past is getting the kind of empirical
- 23 data and the kind of theoretical view of the impact of
- their work, and I know that the FTC has benefitted from
- 25 that in the past, and hopefully that will benefit the

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 future here. Thanks.
- MS. MICHEL: Thank you.
- Now we have John Squires.
- 4 MR. SQUIRES: Thank you. I also should disclaim
- 5 that the remarks and opinions are my own and not the
- 6 product of my firm's research nor the industry
- 7 associations I represent.
- 8 From a financial services industry standpoint, I
- 9 probably should also disclaim that past performance is
- 10 no guarantee of future results, but given the current
- 11 state of play, that's probably not funny. Let's hope
- 12 not.
- 13 I would like to first like to thank the
- 14 Commission for --
- 15 UNIDENTIFIED SPEAKER: You still have a job,
- 16 don't you, John?
- MR. SQUIRES: Well, we'll see after the speech.
- 18 I would like to first thank the Commission for putting
- 19 this together. Today's panel is timely and topical
- 20 because we're seeing a market failure in the marketplace
- 21 for ideas. If we listen closely to the marketplace
- 22 for ideas, it's echoing a similar message that the
- 23 financial markets are sending; that is, over-stressed
- 24 and outdated rule sets are causing a lack of
- transparency, leading to a mispricing of assets.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              Now, the stressed and outdated rule set here,
 2
      and that is the subject of discussions specifically, is
 3
      the entire market value rule construct for patent
 4
      infringement damages. Now, the asset mispricing
      occurring are the patents, which are no longer able to
 5
 6
      be priced based upon fundamentals.
 7
              Now, the last time we saw this in our industry,
 8
      the symptom of this phenomena, was with the automatic
 9
      injunction rule, and that was at issue in the eBay case.
10
      As a result, the four major financial industry
      associations came together, and these associations
11
12
      comprise many thousands of members, and filed their first
13
      amicus brief on patent law to the United States Supreme
14
      Court in order to shed light on the contours and
15
      specific market effects of this problem.
              Now, we argued successfully that courts should
16
17
      have the discretion in appropriate circumstances to
      balance competing interests and harms. One such
18
19
      circumstance that we point out was where an injunction
20
      would disrupt or dislocate the U.S. financial system
21
      markets or exchanges. Another is where the enforcer is
      a non-practicing entity which provides no goods or
22
23
      services.
```

Now, the practical result for me today tells us
that the market works, that patents can and should have
For The Record, Inc.

```
1 more value in the hands of commercial competitors
```

- 2 versus non-practicing entities. Monetary damages may in
- 3 fact make a non-practicing entity whole, whereas
- 4 commercial competitors may suffer irreparable harm.
- Now, if we carry this concept forward, we have
- 6 to ask: Well, then, what is the appropriate measure of
- 7 monetary damages for patent infringement? If we look to
- 8 current damages jurisprudence, we see a market failure
- 9 resulting from a rule set formulated in a bygone era in
- 10 a marketplace at the time with relatively new economic
- 11 actors.
- 12 As a result, the current landscape is skewed
- 13 toward predatory litigation and has created a lottery-
- 14 ticket mentality that all but drowns out legitimate
- 15 market price signals. Now this is because the patent
- owners are able to obtain damages awarded on components
- 17 that they did not invent and are not covered by the
- 18 claims of the patent.
- This results in a distortion, which is
- 20 particularly profound in an industries with complex
- value chains and where products and services can
- 22 literally be the subject of literally hundreds, if not
- thousands, of patents.
- Now, while incentives to obtain patents are
- 25 strongly reflected in their growing number, the remedial

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 regimes to compensate patent owners for infringement have
```

- 2 not kept pace. The lag has led to a rise in litigation
- 3 and abuses that are straining the system and calling
- 4 into question the role of patents in the modern economy.
- 5 Indeed as I testified to the Senate Judiciary Committee,
- 6 Professor Josh Lerner's work confirms that financial
- 7 service firms, in fact, are 27 times more likely to see
- 8 a patent suit than other industries.
- 9 As a result, available patent remedies need to
- 10 be sharpened so that a patent owner's remedy is valued
- in accordance with the specific contribution of the
- invention, while preserving full valuation under current
- remedies for more traditional, patent reliant and mature
- 14 industries.
- 15 For example, where an inventive contribution is
- a new compound, a break-through pharmaceutical for
- 17 example, valuation would reflect of course that first
- and foremost the patent owner would cover lost profits,
- which it could prove, and a reasonable royalty
- 20 calculated on the price of the full component that it
- 21 could not prove through lost profits.
- 22 By contrast where the inventive contribution is
- one of many components in a complex product or service,
- 24 an improved memory chip, for example, in a complex
- 25 processing system, then valuation should be correlated

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 to the component.
```

- Now, a fundamental tenet of economics is that
- 3 free market most efficiently values goods and services,
- 4 and I, in fact, had the quote that Jay put up from the
- 5 Application of Kirk case, but the point there is that
- 6 patent value related to the value of an invention should
- 7 be determined by the marketplace. Well, what does that
- 8 mean?
- 9 It means a lot of different things. Recent
- 10 decisions have demonstrated that patent awards can
- 11 grossly exceed market values, and the Microsoft
- 12 case that Mallun mentioned this morning is an example of
- that, and there, over half a billion dollars worth of
- damages were awarded where the court allowed a royalty
- 15 calculation based upon the entire value of the Windows
- Operating System, even though the infringing component
- was much less than that.
- 18 This is not a market-based calculation. It's
- 19 rather a symptom of how law and patent damages have
- 20 moved away from market principles, particularly for
- 21 goods and services that have complex value chains.
- Now, calculating reasonable royalty consists of
- 23 two parts: First, you have to establish the royalty
- 24 base, that is, the total value of the infringer's sales
- on which the patent owner is entitled to royalty

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 payments, and then the second part is establish a
```

- 2 royalty rate to apply to that base.
- 3 This approach is consistent with the overall
- 4 philosophy of relying on market forces and calculating
- 5 compensation to the patent owner. This policy is
- 6 thwarted, however, if the royalty rate base is
- 7 artificially high or artificially low.
- Now, modern technology, of course, involves
- 9 interrelated components that are sold to consumers as
- 10 part of functional units. Many of these components is
- 11 subject of patent protection and can be combined in
- multiple ways to yield new and improved systems and
- 13 methods. If, however, each individual patent owner has
- 14 a possibility of obtaining a damage award based
- 15 upon the price of the entire end product, an incentive
- to engage in litigation over licensing arises.
- 17 I'm going to provide an example to illustrate
- 18 this. Now, suppose a particular product is sold by E,
- in this case a cell phone comprised of components A, B,
- 20 C and D. The product itself sells for \$10, and each
- 21 individual component sells for \$2. If the owners of A
- through D enter into license arrangements with E each,
- 23 each receives a 10 percent royalty rate on the price of
- 24 the component or 20 cents.
- E is still left with a 12 percent profit. Now

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 suppose that one of the patent owners, D, decided to
```

- 2 bring patent litigation and is successful in arguing the
- 3 end product is sold as a functional unit, including this
- 4 patented component. Now, further suppose he is
- 5 successful in obtaining a royalty rate of half of that,
- 5 percent, but on the total price of the unit, \$10.
- 7 As a consequence D is receiving 50 cents per
- 8 unit. All numbers of serious problems arise with this
- 9 example. First, D is rewarded by choosing to litigate
- 10 rather than to license. This distortion results in a
- 11 jackpot litigation mentality that diverts economic
- 12 activity to less productive purposes.
- Perhaps even more important is the impact on E.
- Recall that under a licensing regime, where each patent
- 15 owner is paid a royalty based upon their specific
- 16 contribution, E is still left with a 12 percent return
- 17 on sales price.
- 18 If D is successful in obtaining a royalty based
- upon the entire market value, then E's return drops to 9
- 20 percent. Stated simply, this 25 percent reduction in
- 21 E's return will have a real impact on E's willingness to
- 22 sell the product and will no doubt stifle innovation.
- Now, my example was rather simplistic. Most modern
- 24 products or services involve hundreds, if not thousands,
- of patents. This only magnifies the problem.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Second, the uncertainty of the end result
```

- 2 chills innovation and prevents proper market pricing of
- 3 the patent.
- Finally, the appearance of a new character on
- 5 the stage, a non-practicing entity, has altered the
- 6 dynamic. Two important implications arise out of this
- 7 development. First the NPE, the non-practicing entity,
- 8 unlike actual manufacturers, has no fixed cost in
- 9 creating the patented component.
- 10 Now, commercial suppliers have fixed costs,
- 11 mitigating some of the risk of pursuing a litigation
- 12 strategy that may otherwise chill production. Now,
- again think back to our example. If any one of A,
- 14 B, C or D brings litigation, seeking a royalty based upon
- 15 the entire market value of the end product, they run the
- risk of having E re-deploy its capital to more
- 17 profitable alternatives.
- 18 Stated simply, if A, B, C and D actually
- 19 manufacture the components, as contrasted with the non-
- 20 practicing entity, they are less likely to engage in an
- 21 activity that will undermine the production of articles
- including that component.
- Now, the NPE model is often attempting to
- 24 maximize short-term gains. This leads again to the
- jackpot mentality and further tips the playing field in

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 favor of litigation. NPEs can, in fact, do better than
```

- 2 folks manufacturing the components.
- A more consistent, uniform approach would be to
- 4 limit the application of the entire market value rule to
- 5 situations where the patented component is the entire
- 6 basis for the demand. This formulation has several
- 7 critical advantages. First, it would ensure that a
- 8 leveraging patent beyond its scope is the exception rather
- 9 than the rule.
- 10 Second, applying this formulation should
- 11 reduce uncertainty, and therefore the distortions that
- 12 occur when the system can be gamed.
- 13 The Supreme Court recently provided further
- 14 insight into this theme in the Quanta case. While
- 15 Quanta involved the doctrine of patent exhaustion, part
- of the rationale behind the doctrine is to prevent
- 17 patent owners from leveraging their patents to secure
- 18 market control on related but unpatented items. This
- may be of particular interest to the Commission.
- In Quanta, the Court was forced to consider
- 21 the extent to which a product must embody a patent to
- trigger the exhaustion doctrine. Now, as an
- 23 initial matter, the Court traced its own jurisprudence
- lamenting the increasing frequency (quote, unquote), with
- 25 which patent owners were using license terms to secure

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 market control of related but unpatented items.
```

- 2 The Court further noted that the primary purpose
- 3 of patent law is not the creation of private fortunes
- 4 but the promotion of progress of science and the useful
- 5 arts. Consequently, the Court observed that patent
- 6 rights are limited to the invention described and
- 7 claimed, and Courts should focus on the inventive
- 8 aspects of the claims as distinguished from standard
- 9 components.
- 10 The teaching of *Quanta* are instructive as to the
- 11 application of the entire market value rule. Indeed,
- 12 the logic and rationale of not allowing a patent owner
- 13 to secure control over non-patented but related items as
- 14 part of a licensing strategy stands in direct contrast
- 15 to the current entire market value rule practice of
- 16 allowing a patent owner to capture a royalty for non-
- 17 patented but related items that are used in combination
- 18 with a patented item.
- As in *Quanta*, damages calculations, royalty
- 20 calculations, should be rightfully focused on the
- inventive aspect of the claims and should not be
- 22 extended to standard, non-patented components
- 23 absent exceptional circumstances. The premise is only
- underscored by that Court's admonition that patent laws,
- 25 again, are designed not to create private fortunes, but

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 to promote innovation.
- 2 So to the question I posed in my opening slide:
- 3 Can Quanta finish what eBay started? I would echo the
- 4 refrain that was echoed that was so successful in this
- 5 election season: Yes, we can.
- 6 MS. MICHEL: Thank you. Now, Judge McKelvie, I
- 7 believe you'll be talking with us about willfulness.
- 8 THE HONORABLE MCKELVIE: I thought I would take
- 9 on what's been happening with Seagate during the last
- 10 year. Remember, it was decided in August of '07.
- 11 Ashley Miller is responsible for all the correct things
- 12 in the slide. I'm responsible for all the incorrect
- 13 things in the slides.
- I remember a couple years ago when the FTC and
- The National Academies looked at the issue of willful
- infringement, they identified a number of problems with
- 17 willful infringement. It discouraged research. It
- 18 didn't actually act as a deterrent. It interfered with
- 19 lawyer/client relationships, and it spawned
- 20 inefficiencies in litigation.
- 21 So the FTC suggested that we look to new
- 22 standards that would give written notice for
- 23 infringement and punish deliberate copying. The National
- Academies said abolish the affirmative duty of due care,
- and bifurcate willfulness proceedings.

For The Record, Inc.

```
The Federal Circuit came down with Seagate and
 1
 2
      knocked out Underwater Devices, thank goodness.
                                                       Thev
      adopted a recklessness standard, which for us
 3
 4
      litigators is good because nobody knows what it means.
 5
              So Ashley and I looked to see the reported
 6
      opinions that have come out under Seagate in the last
 7
             Those of you who work in litigation know that
 8
      saying there's 40 opinions out there doesn't say there
 9
      are 40 decisions because there are a lot of unreported
10
      decisions, and there's a lot of looseness in this. I'm
      not sure I would cite these 40 in a brief to the court,
11
12
      but there are some interesting patterns. I thought I
13
      would share them with you and make some recommendations.
14
              So in 15 out of the 20 cases where parties
15
      sought to eliminate the willfulness issue from
16
      litigation early on, the judges denied the motions --
17
      denied the motions in the context of a motion for
      summary judgment or denied the motions in the context
18
19
      of a motion to stay discovery.
20
              We put it on this chart because a person might
21
      say, Well, that may have happened early on in August
22
      of '07, but now judges are more inclined to grant
23
      summary judgment. The answer is: This pattern shows
24
                             That's judges who deny motions
      the regular bad guys.
25
      for summary judgment. The green are the good guys who
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 grant motions for summary judgment. I think there's an
```

- 2 ANDA case in there for green, so that it doesn't
- 3 necessarily count, but it's showing that judges are not
- 4 knocking willful infringement out of patent litigation
- 5 early.
- There's some good news, some interesting news,
- 7 assuming that you agree with me that willful
- 8 infringement is not necessarily the most productive part
- 9 of litigation. Five post-trial, non-jury decisions by
- 10 trial judges find no willful infringement. That's five
- of five, so that says if you can survive your battle
- over the waiver of the privilege, you survive the jury
- 13 trial or survive non-jury trial, you get to the judge,
- 14 the judge will say no willful infringement.
- 15 In nine cases where a jury found willful
- infringement, the judge took away the willfulness
- 17 verdict in four out of the nine. Actually some judges
- said, Well, I'm going to uphold the willful infringement
- 19 verdict, but I will not enhance the damages.
- In the eight other cases, I think it's eight, or
- 21 nine other cases, the judge said, The jury banged you,
- 22 I'm going to bang you. I have a paper that I gave to
- 23 Suzanne, who will put it on the web site, that will show
- you these 40 cases. And you can look and see what
- happened, because I know what people are interested in is

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 the underlying issue, which I'm not going to talk about
```

- 2 today, which is what is willful -- what is willful
- 3 infringement? What's reckless conduct?
- 4 So I said to Ashley: Are people filing fewer
- 5 claims of willful infringement now that the recklessness
- 6 standard is higher? We thought we would take a quick
- 7 snapshot of the Eastern District of Texas to see if
- 8 plaintiffs' lawyers are filing fewer claims, and in a
- 9 quick one-week sample, it shows that there are maybe
- 10 fewer. It's sort of a very light sample. Incidentally,
- 11 my partner was in Texas on Tuesday. He got a trial date
- 12 four years from now in the rocket docket.
- So what do these changes tell us? Has Seagate
- 14 eliminated our concerns about the problems with willful
- 15 infringement? The answer is probably not. Has Seagate
- 16 eliminated the need for companies to obtain exculpatory
- 17 legal opinions? Probably not, especially if you consult
- 18 former judges who can give you an opinion, discount this
- 19 week.
- 20 Has Seagate eliminated the
- 21 the need introduced in legislation, to maybe change
- 22 the standard for willful infringement to provide for
- 23 written notice and deliberate copying? Probably not.
- 24 That is, it's still a little bit unclear. You have to
- look at the decisions to see what judges think

For The Record, Inc.

- deliberate or willful infringement is.
- 2 So what are the solutions? And these are the
- 3 ones Todd endorsed, so I don't need to go into them too
- 4 much. I think the things we need to do, I think the
- 5 Federal Circuit needs to encourage district court judges
- 6 to grapple with willful infringement early on in a case.
- 7 Most judges are reluctant to do that perhaps because
- 8 they have to write an opinion on it.
- 9 If the Federal Circuit would start telling trial
- judges to grapple with willful infringement early, it
- 11 would knock it out and give parties some comfort that
- they wouldn't incur all of the expense.
- There's a proposal floating in Congress to put
- 14 willful infringement at the end of the case. That
- actually would probably be pretty effective in this
- 16 situation; that is, if people are still going to plead
- willful infringement and judges aren't going to deal
- 18 with it in summary judgment and say, you can't plead
- 19 willful infringement until there's been a finding of
- 20 liability and the patent is not invalid, it would come
- 21 up after the case has been litigated.
- In those cases you've seen that the judges, with
- 23 the pattern I showed you, would probably end up saying,
- 24 unless there's really egregious conduct,

25

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 that there's no willful infringement. That rolls back to
```

- 2 say you probably don't need the opinion, so I'll give an
- 3 even bigger discount now, if you don't need it.
- 4 On the issue of willful infringement and judge
- 5 and jury, there's a lot of case law out there that says,
- 6 This may be an issue for the judge rather than a jury.
- 7 That may be another remedy that we can use to somewhat
- 8 correct it.
- 9 So I had looked at Seagate. I've been watching
- 10 Seagate for a year. I thought maybe with a year it
- 11 would wash through the system and improve what's
- 12 happening with willful infringement, and my suggestion
- 13 to the FTC and to the National Academies is, you look at
- 14 your advice, it hasn't really worked out with Seagate,
- 15 and that we may need to make some additional changes.
- MS. MICHEL: Thank you. A very practical
- 17 presentation. Thank you very much.
- 18 Why don't we start with willfulness. I was
- wondering if any of the other panelists had any
- 20 additional comments about the need to continue thinking
- 21 about willfulness doctrine following Seagate. In
- 22 particular, we heard in 2002 about the interim effect of
- 23 willfulness allegations and how that could affect
- 24 settlement negotiations and licensing negotiations.
- Do you think that that effect has been lessened For The Record, Inc.
 - (301) 870-8025 www.ftrinc.net (800) 921-5555

```
1 at all by the Seagate decision, and in particular the
```

- 2 requirement that there be a recklessness to the
- defendant's actions? Specifically, are there fewer
- 4 willfulness findings now that would lessen the in terrorem
- 5 effect.
- THE HONORABLE MCKELVIE: I think the end point
- 7 of my statistics show that there were probably fewer
- 8 willfulness verdicts. I haven't looked at the
- 9 statistics out of Houston. Probably at the end point
- 10 we're doing a lot better, but the time and expense and
- 11 the investment of getting there is still just as great.
- 12 If you look at the pattern and if you look at
- the paper, you see what the judges look to for the
- 14 purpose of finding willful infringement, it's the same
- 15 old factors the judges relied upon before, which is that
- 16 you copied. You didn't try to design around, and you
- 17 lied to me during litigation, and I don't like you.
- 18 MS. MICHEL: It's always bad when the judge
- 19 doesn't like you. John?
- MR. SQUIRES: Yes. As Dan pointed out this
- 21 morning, if you look at pleadings, willful infringement
- is still automatic. You're going to see that as
- 23 something that is put forward, but what I think Seagate
- has done is it's discounted the availability to make
- 25 good on the threat.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              So in a license negotiation, whatever premium
 2
      there may be, unless there's some good hard facts that
 3
      they'll reveal so much as to make good on the threat,
 4
      it's a very much discounted equation now in the
 5
      bargaining.
 6
              MS. MICHEL: Any thoughts -- Todd?
 7
              MR. DICKINSON: Maybe to add a little from my
 8
      corporate experience.
 9
              MS. MICHEL: Please.
10
              MR. DICKINSON: I think it provided a floor.
      think it provided some relief and provided a lot -- you
11
12
      didn't feel like there was this open hole in front of
13
      you of uncertainty, and I think that's probably the best
14
      effect of it at all.
15
              I think with regard to what Judge McKelvie said,
16
      I understand what he's saying about lessening the number
17
      of opinions. I think we're seeing -- I think some of
      the data is that we're seeing fewer opinions but only
18
19
      some delta 10 percent, 15 percent or something, so
20
      people are still getting them for that extra assurance.
21
              They're just feeling a little more secure on
      relying. There's still some reform that needs to be
22
23
      done I think, but I think maybe people are willing to
24
      let that one go and not worry Congress with it so much.
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

MS. MICHEL: Does anyone have any sense of

25

```
1 whether Seagate has lessened what for some companies,
```

- 2 not all, but the effect of willfulness in putting a
- 3 damper on the willingness to read patent applications or
- 4 patents? John, you might be the only one with the
- 5 experience.
- 6 MR. SQUIRES: I would echo what Mallun said this
- 7 morning, not necessarily willfulness as an impediment to
- 8 reading patent applications, although I think it's
- 9 expanded. If you're focusing on the reprehensibility of
- 10 the conduct and the other side has expended what is
- 11 reasonable behavior of a business to undertake, I
- think there's less got you on the willfulness side to
- 13 undertake to do that.
- 14 There's other problems such as: Are you going
- 15 to get the entire universe of things you need to see,
- 16 what's the timeliness of it, and are you going into the
- markets where you have less experience versus markets
- which you've been historically in and probably are in
- 19 the best position to know most of the information?
- 20 MR. DICKINSON: Let me ask John a question. Do
- you think that's going to provoke a cultural shift in
- those industries and companies that traditionally have
- 23 said to their engineers, Don't look at patents, now
- 24 may loosen that up a little bit culturally, internally?
- MR. SQUIRES: It might be a cultural trend. I For The Record, Inc.

```
1 think shift is probably too sudden.
```

- THE HONORABLE MCKELVIE: But it should. That
- 3 is, if *Underwater Devices* is gone -- it was *Underwater*
- 4 Devices that caused the problem about looking at
- 5 patents -- so I think even if you look at the decisions
- 6 that define reckless conduct, it's not that a party was
- 7 on notice of the patent. There are other things the
- 8 judges are looking to, so people should feel much more
- 9 comfortable about doing research, and candidly they
- 10 should feel much more comfortable about proceeding
- 11 without opinions.
- MR. SQUIRES: That's a good thing overall
- 13 because it's really a question of due diligence. If
- later on you're staring right down the barrel of a
- 15 patent that sat right on the market entry that you were
- 16 going into, what did you know, and when did you know it,
- and why didn't you do anything about it? That was a
- 18 little more difficult question to ask when the
- information ostensibly is there.
- MS. MICHEL: Why don't we go ahead and dive into
- 21 that damages issue.
- MR. DICKINSON: One more thing --
- MS. MICHEL: Please do.
- MR. DICKINSON: -- on the damages piece that
- 25 flows from that, and I think one interesting issue

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 that's left open, we'll see the Courts -- some have
```

- 2 discussed whether Judge Dyk's dissent, or concurrence I
- 3 guess, in Knorr-Bremse about looking to the Supreme Court
- 4 and their law of punitive damages, which we just heard I
- 5 guess yesterday at the Supreme Court again -- whether that
- 6 will have an impact -- and of what magnitude -- on
- 7 trebling or not trebling.
- 8 MS. MICHEL: I have a very specific question
- 9 actually about the entire market value rule and why so
- 10 much of the debate has focused on it. In looking at
- John's very interesting example of damages calculation
- 12 in which the entire market, the \$10 instead of the \$2
- was used, I was thinking: Well, isn't part of the
- 14 problem that the royalty rate there is 5 percent instead
- of 2 percent, and if it were 2 percent, you would have
- 16 ended up with 20 cents again?
- 17 Why has so much of the debate been about the
- 18 base and not the rate, and should we be thinking more
- 19 about the rate? Tom, please.
- 20 PROFESSOR COTTER: With all due respect to some
- of the esteemed panelists, my own view over the years
- 22 has been that things like the entire market value rule
- and apportionment concepts, in an antitrust context,
- 24 have been largely debunked, particularly leveraging. It
- would be kind of a shame I think to start applying those

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 context with more robustness in the patent context.
```

- What we should be doing in my opinion is
- 3 focusing on the economic realities, which is that
- 4 leveraging can happen, but it tends to be more the
- 5 exception than the rule, and we should be looking for
- 6 specific indicia of leveraging or hold-up and not using
- 7 leveraging and the possibility of leveraging as a
- 8 guiding principles in formulating damages rules.
- 9 In the context of reasonable royalties, in
- 10 particular, again from where I come, what we should be
- doing is consistent with this but for damages rule that
- we apply in many other areas of the law, trying to
- 13 figure out what the patentees' royalty revenue would
- 14 have been but for the infringement.
- The hypothetical negotiations would, to some
- 16 extent, reflect the parties' ex ante estimate of the
- value of the patented technology. Now, it's difficult
- 18 to calculate or estimate what that hypothetical bargain
- 19 would be, so we have to rely on proxies, but my view is
- 20 we should rely on the proxies that the parties
- 21 themselves would have relied on.
- MS. MICHEL: Yes.
- 23 PROFESSOR COTTER: And so what we probably need
- 24 to do is start focusing more on an industry by industry
- 25 basis on how parties to real world, voluntarily

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 transactions come up with an appropriate royalty base,
```

- 2 when do they use the value of the entire product, when
- 3 do they use some subset, and also what royalty rates do
- 4 they apply.
- 5 So maybe the problem is not in applying an
- 6 entire market value royalty base, but in applying a rate
- 7 that is too high given the particular field of art.
- 8 MS. MICHEL: And in thinking about that
- 9 hypothetical negotiation and what kind of base the
- 10 parties might have chosen, what kind of factors do you
- 11 think might influence their choice? Let me throw out a
- couple suggestions and see if anyone has a reaction.
- For instance, the practicalities of what's being
- bought and sold and what can be easily priced, rather
- 15 than some relationship between the invention and a
- 16 bigger product. I'm thinking in terms of, if the
- 17 patent's on a circuit, well, nobody buys and sells a
- 18 circuit. You buy and sell a chip, and so the chip is
- something easy to price, and let's make that our base.
- Tom, do you have any suggestions on what kind of
- 21 proxies and how to think about that hypothetical
- 22 negotiation and what it means for the base?
- PROFESSOR COTTER: Well, I think what we
- 24 actually need here is more empirical evidence on this
- issue. This is something I don't personally have a

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 great deal of knowledge of how -- for example, in various
```

- 2 fields within IT -- how firms go about calculating the
- 3 value of technology when they voluntarily enter these
- 4 transactions.
- 5 What I will note is that going back a long time,
- 6 even back in the days when the U.S. Supreme Court was
- 7 most infatuated with the patent misuse doctrine, they
- 8 always took the position that, for the convenience of the
- 9 parties, you could license a package of patents and
- 10 calculate a royalty based on some package of patents,
- 11 even some of which might not be used.
- 12 So convenience of the parties has always been a
- 13 factor, even under earlier, now to some extent discarded,
- models of both antitrust and patent enforcement. So I
- think what we need to do is focus more on the real world
- 16 particulars in given industries rather than guessing the
- 17 way the real world works. Let's find out how parties do
- 18 this.
- 19 MS. MICHEL: John?
- 20 MR. SQUIRES: Thanks. In response to your first
- 21 question, at play on a royalty base obviously is the law
- of large numbers. If you think the base for Windows
- 23 Operating Systems sales is a big number, think about
- 24 what it would be to set a base upon volume traded
- 25 through the New York Stock Exchange in a single day.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              So that is really a small calibrational factor
 2
      on the rate as opposed to -- and that was assuming
      really even sort of the charitable: Well, we're not
 3
 4
      asking for what you would ask for normally in a context
 5
      where a component is applied. We're only asking for
 6
      half of that. Still the law of large numbers gets you
      into trouble pretty quickly.
 7
 8
              I also happen to think the inquiry is backwards,
 9
      and that is: Why should a patentholder get more than
10
      they invented? That's the fundamental question.
      they can prove, like the example this morning with the
11
12
      improved aerodynamics gas mileage and acceleration based
13
      upon a tire design, that's the basis for the consumer
14
      demand, more power to you.
15
              That should be provable and demonstrable, and I
16
      think it goes then to Tom's comment, that dynamic
17
      informs the ex ante behavior. To borrow from Todd's
      analogy, if you have a bottomless floor in front of you
18
19
      going into the negotiation, because they're going to be
20
      able to put up numbers of volume traded through the
21
      exchange in a single day, you're in a lot of trouble
22
      once you're on that footing for the debate.
23
              MR. DICKINSON: Yeah, to respond a little bit to
24
      John. First of all on the rate question, I've been in
25
      traditional industries mostly, where there's a lot of
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 data. I've been IP counsel at oil companies, chief IP
```

- 2 counsel at GE, and other things, and we would normally
- 3 quote 2 to 6 percent, 2 to 6 percent, 2 to 6 percent.
- 4 So I think there's a lot of data to back that
- 5 up. Where we may not have it is in new technologies and
- 6 also the brand -- that is something that is so focused
- 7 that they can really command an out-of-ordinary rate.
- 8 So I would guess 80/90 percent of royalty rates are
- 9 going to come in roughly the same place.
- To John's questions a little bit, he's starting
- 11 to veer off in that rhetorical area that I talked about
- before, the issue of large numbers. I think it's an
- issue. To get to that question though, the jury has to
- 14 have first found that the defendant didn't invent, that the
- 15 person who did invent what the defendant used did indeed
- invent something that was patentable, and secondly that
- 17 the defendant infringed and willfully infringed. The
- 18 defendant stole from them.
- 19 So they get to that point. I understand what
- you're saying, so juries can weigh that kind of thing I
- 21 think a little bit, whether you're going to destroy the
- New York Stock Exchange or whether you're not. I mean,
- 23 I think that's part of the issue.
- On the other hand, it is a huge number, and
- 25 those numbers do cause market distortions and can cause

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 market distortions. In particular can impact
```

- 2 emerging technologies and emerging businesses and
- 3 industries with candor, like John's, which have
- 4 traditionally not had to deal with these questions and
- 5 suddenly find themselves having to be in an environment
- 6 which is fluid, to say the least.
- 7 MS. MICHEL: You used the word stole, and
- 8 infringement being a strict liability offense, should
- 9 that fact play into our approach to remedies policies?
- 10 MR. DICKINSON: Well, it was a provocative word.
- 11 That word should probably the concept John might want to
- 12 address.
- MR. SQUIRES: Yeah, I was stuck on the word
- 14 stole myself. Well, again I think what we have to
- 15 remember is going on here, as between commercial
- 16 competitors, you are going to fall through the lost
- 17 profits analysis before you get to entire market value.
- 18 What you can't prove up but for the infringement, that
- was your lost profits, you will now be able to recapture
- 20 no less than reasonable royalties as provided by statue.
- 21 Again the non-practicing entity goes right to
- 22 it. There is no lost profits analysis for the most part
- 23 for them because they're not commercial competitors, so
- they're unable to do better by showing an infringement,
- 25 but now your eyes get very big because of a number of For The Record, Inc.

```
1 factors -- even if your royalty rate in the industry is
```

- 2 to 6 percent, when you're talking about a very large base
- 3 and multiplying or applying the rate by that base.
- 4 Again you're trying to, in an ex ante manner,
- 5 negotiate what you could settle the case for versus
- 6 whether it can go through all the way to the jury and
- 7 have maybe unlimited liability. It's a very difficult
- 8 dynamic. And now could you bring me back to the question
- 9 that you just posed?
- MS. MICHEL: What was my question?
- MR. DICKINSON: Let me first retract the word
- 12 stole.
- MS. MICHEL: I understand.
- 14 MR. DICKINSON: I was using it in kind of a
- 15 provocative manner to try to suggest how the debate has
- 16 engaged.
- MS. MICHEL: But it's an interesting issue in
- 18 that we have inadvertent infringers. That is what some of
- 19 the literature is now calling them, or you might call them
- independent inventors, although it's a slightly
- 21 confusing term. What does that mean for how we ought to
- 22 approach policy in general when trying to formulate
- 23 damages rules?
- MR. DICKINSON: So like willful infringers
- 25 though that haven't studied the art, I mean?

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 MS. MICHEL: That's a good point.
```

- 2 MR. DICKINSON: There's a spectrum of stuff
- 3 there.
- 4 MR. SQUIRES: We haven't talked, but I would tee
- 5 this up for maybe the next panel with Professor Meurer
- and say what you're really talking about is there is a
- 7 notice problem because you have strict liability. In a
- 8 real property system, for trespass, it's knowable
- 9 and recordable, and that's the boundary. Where there
- 10 are fuzzy boundaries and non-existent or imperfect
- 11 notice regimes, it's a big weight to bring down in a
- 12 strict liability system.
- MR. DICKINSON: A large part of the reform, a
- 14 piece of the reform debate we were talking about in
- 15 Congress was this question of notice -- when would post-
- 16 grant review trigger with notice, and when will
- 17 willfulness trigger notice, and what is the type of the
- 18 notice. And there's tension in that as well.
- 19 MS. MICHEL: Tom?
- 20 PROFESSOR COTTER: On the question of
- inadvertent infringement, there's a fairly recent draft
- 22 paper on SSRN by Mark Lemley and Chris Cotropia which
- 23 seems to indicate that inadvertent infringement is
- 24 actually more the norm than the exception today, and if
- 25 that's true, and again I guess that's maybe another

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 piece of empirical analysis that ought to be further
```

- 2 analyzed and investigated, but assuming that that's
- 3 true, what are the implications for policy?
- I don't think anybody wants to abandon strict
- 5 liability for patent infringement as a general
- 6 principle. I think it would be a bad idea, but so what
- 7 are the implications? Can we make notice better?
- 8 That's certainly one of the topics on the table. To the
- 9 extent inadvertent infringement occurs, it's one of the
- 10 necessary conditions for patent hold-up, not the only
- one, but it's one of the conditions that must be
- 12 present.
- So there are implications that flow from this,
- 14 but I'm not sure that that fact by itself necessarily
- 15 leads to any major changes or reforms to patent law.
- MR. ADKINSON: I was wondering if the panelists
- 17 would comment on how difficult it is judges and juries
- 18 to implement the hypothetical negotiation concept and
- 19 whether that is a source of concern for defendants and
- 20 for plaintiffs for that matter?
- 21 MS. MICHEL: That's definitely an area I think
- 22 we'll continue to consider.
- 23 THE HONORABLE MCKELVIE: I'll try. This
- 24 follows up on Professor Cotter's comment before, which
- is that a difference I see between lost profits and

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 reasonable royalty is lost profits tends to be constrained
```

- 2 by the facts, and reasonable royalty isn't constrained by
- 3 the facts, but by the imagination by the expert witness.
- But on the other hand, I didn't see juries lose
- 5 too much ground on reasonable royalties in cases I saw.
- 6 There weren't many cases that I saw where damages was
- 7 really a big battle of contention between the parties in
- 8 terms of thinking the jury got it very wrong.
- 9 MR. DICKINSON: The hypothetical negotiation,
- 10 interestingly you may want to have witnesses that come
- forward from Congress and others about their reform
- 12 efforts because that issue and the concept came up as a
- possible way to deal with the reform in the damages
- 14 area.
- 15 That was controversial. It wasn't adopted, but
- it was given a pretty good airing, and so you may want
- to hear from them about how they felt about balancing
- 18 the question of using hypothetical negotiation --
- 19 the economic determination
- of what the patent's value was -- versus, for
- 21 example, what John was talking about: Shouldn't you only
- 22 be entitled to what the actual invention is? That
- 23 requires kind of a technological analysis of what it is
- and then study that byplay intention too.
- MS. MICHEL: Thank you.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 MR. SQUIRES: I would say part of the
```

- 2 hypothetical negotiation is informed by, for example,
- 3 the case that Mallun referred to, Lucent.
- When you read in the paper that there's a potential jury
- 5 award of a half billion dollars, based upon an
- 6 application of the entire market value rule possible out
- 7 there, it colors your discussions upfront.
- I want to make one comment to that. People
- 9 this morning rightly said that those issues are being
- worked out through the system, but you can't forget
- 11 that when you lose that verdict, you have to post a bond
- 12 in that amount, so it's really little comfort that maybe
- 13 a few years later, I will be able to return on appeal.
- 14 Large companies can post those bonds. Mid-range
- 15 companies, smaller companies, that could be the end.
- 16 MR. DICKINSON: The *Microsoft* verdict was
- 17 overturned. That's the other side of the story.
- 18 MS. MICHEL: It was overturned, but on different
- 19 grounds I thought on appeal. Microsoft had a license.
- THE HONORABLE MCKELVIE: Actually, unless I
- 21 missed the statistics, I think the practice has been
- that the Federal Circuit has been staying injunctions
- pending appeal, and I understand the bond is a slightly
- separate issue, but my impression generally is the
- hammer doesn't come down on defendants until the Federal

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Circuit has affirmed.
```

- MS. MICHEL: Go ahead.
- 3 MR. ADKINSON: One other quick question on this,
- 4 going on something Jay said about the circular nature of
- 5 determinations of damages by courts and determinations of
- 6 value in licensing.
- 7 I want to focus specifically on the extent to
- 8 which you think that licensing negotiations are
- 9 sensitive to what damage awards are doing, I quess
- specifically with respect to settlement negotiations,
- but also just generally with respect to licensing
- 12 negotiations.
- MS. MICHEL: Any thoughts on that?
- 14 PROFESSOR COTTER: I mean, I think it's best
- from people who actually do licensing rather than me
- trying to speculate, but it seems like there ought to be
- 17 a connection, but what the connection is in the real
- 18 world, I don't really know.
- MS. MICHEL: And we will certainly ask our next
- 20 panel that question also.
- MR. DICKINSON: Also don't forget, a lot of
- 22 licensing -- one challenge, and I know that on various
- 23 contacts in my work, we've tried to capture data from
- licensees, but so many licenses are obviously
- 25 confidential business matters that it's very difficult I

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 think to get a broad range of data on licensing.
```

- 2 Licensing Executive Society might be another
- 3 place we would look, but that's been one of their
- 4 traditional challenges, because whether it's a
- 5 settlement or whether its just a regular arms-length
- 6 negotiation, there aren't a lot of parties that are
- 7 willing to talk about it for one reason or
- 8 another.
- 9 MR. SQUIRES: Yeah. That's why I was puzzling
- 10 and hesitating a little bit to answer. It's just
- 11 hard to know because we talked about data this morning.
- 12 That's an area where industry data and maybe the royalty
- data is out there, but it needs some crunching, and
- we're hopeful the Commission report might be able to
- 15 shed some lights on that, at least those dynamics.
- MR. DICKINSON: I think the LES probably has the
- 17 best data.
- MS. MICHEL: Let's spend a couple minutes on
- 19 eBay before we wrap if you don't mind. Tom, you made an
- 20 interesting point that one thing to look at is what
- 21 factors are good proxy for identifying hold-up when
- 22 doing the injunction analysis.
- Do you have any examples of what factors you --
- of those sorts of factors to give us ideas on what to
- 25 think about?

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              PROFESSOR COTTER: I've been trying to think
 2
      this over for the last several months as I've been
 3
      working on a couple papers on this issue. It seems to
 4
      me that we need a definition of patent hold-up, which I
 5
      think is relatively straightforward. We're talking
 6
      about a small component in the sense of some patented
 7
      invention that is a relatively small aspect of the value
 8
      of some final product.
 9
              We're talking about a situation where the
10
      defendant infringes inadvertently and is thereby caught
      by surprise, and where the defendant's sunk costs in the
11
12
      end product are such that having to design around ex
13
      post would be very expensive in comparison with what it
14
      would have cost ex ante to design around.
15
              Those are the conditions. Again I mentioned a
16
      paper by Denicolo, Geradin, Layne-Farrar, and Padilla,
17
      and I think their analysis is fairly persuasive.
      mean, those are the factors that they go through, and I
18
19
      think if any of those conditions are not present, then
20
      we run some risk of applying eBay too broadly and
21
      abandoning the property-like entitlement in too many
22
      cases.
23
              I think when those factors are provable and
24
      present, maybe it will be a small number of cases, maybe
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

it will be a moderate number of cases, I don't think it

25

```
1 will be a large number of cases, but wherein those
```

- 2 factors are present, I think that would weigh in favor
- 3 of a liability entitlement as opposed to a property
- 4 entitlement.
- 5 There may be other reasons as well, based on the
- 6 traditional notions of public interest, where an
- 7 injunction would cause some extreme detriment to the
- 8 public interest. Again though I think those cases would
- 9 be relatively rare. I would counsel against applying
- 10 eBay in such a way that non-manufacturing patentees are
- 11 never entitled to injunctive relief. I don't think
- that's what the Supreme Court is mandating, and I don't
- think that would be good policy.
- 14 MR. DICKINSON: The public interest issue often
- takes care of itself I think. It's such a rare and
- 16 extreme -- Cipro would be an example, where after a day
- of threatening to withhold, it cratered -- so I think that
- 18 those are kind of few and far between.
- 19 MR. SQUIRES: I would echo Professor Cotter's
- 20 comments and say that if you look back at what happened
- 21 vis-a-vis the legal rule, all they said was: Well, if
- you are entitled to an injunction, you have to prove it
- 23 just like everybody else. There's the four-factor test.
- You have to prove that the public's not harmed and that
- 25 monetary damages won't make you whole and the other two

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 factors.
```

- 2 Those had been elided out of the equation
- 3 previously, and they were assumed, so it puts it back on
- 4 equal footing I think with the rest of injunctive
- 5 jurisprudence.
- 6 PROFESSOR COTTER: Can I just --
- 7 MS. MICHEL: Please.
- PROFESSOR COTTER: There is one curious thing
- 9 about the eBay holding that remedy scholars have picked
- 10 up on and that intellectual property scholars probably
- 11 would not have picked up on, and that is that there
- 12 really is no traditional four-factor test. At least
- there wasn't one prior to eBay.
- 14 What the Court did effectively was take the law
- of preliminary injunctions and modify it. The cases
- they cite are actually cases involving preliminary
- 17 injunctions as opposed to permanent injunctions. Why
- 18 does this matter?
- Well, one possibility is that in the law of
- 20 permanent injunction, at least some of the factors -- such
- 21 as public interest and balance of hardships
- 22 -- the burden of proof could have been accorded to
- 23 the defendant. Now, they are clearly on the plaintiff.
- 24 Whether that will actually have any practical
- difference I think remains to be seen, but in one sense

For The Record, Inc.

```
the Supreme Court created a traditional rule for which
 1
 2
      there actually was no tradition.
 3
              MR. DICKINSON: One interesting thing is to look
 4
      at the market impact. It's unclear. The two most
 5
      significant cases, those provocative and known cases,
 6
      are eBay and RIM, and yet once the settlements occurred
 7
      as a function of the threat of the injunction or the
 8
      injunction, their share prices rose dramatically or at
 9
      least a little bit in eBay cases.
10
              So were they suppressed? It's a little hard to
11
      say.
12
              MS. MICHEL: All right. Well, I want to thank
13
      the panel very much. We'll take a ten-minute break, and
14
      start back again at 3:35.
15
              (Applause.)
16
              (A brief recess was taken.)
17
18
19
20
21
22
```

For The Record, Inc.

23

24

25

- 1 PANEL 3: LEGAL DOCTRINES THAT AFFECT THE VALUE AND
- 2 LICENSING OF PATENTS.
- 3 MODERATORS:
- 4 SUZANNE MICHEL, FTC
- 5 BILL ADKINSON, FTC
- 6 PANELISTS:
- 7 JOHN F. DUFFY, Oswald Symister Colclough Research
- 8 Professor of Law, George Washington University Law
- 9 School
- 10 JOSEPH S. MILLER, Associate Professor, Lewis & Clark Law
- 11 School; Visiting Associate Professor, University of
- 12 Georgia Law School
- 13 MICHAEL MEURER, Michaels Faculty Research Scholar,
- 14 Professor of Law, Boston University School of Law
- JEFFREY P. KUSHAN, Partner, Sidley & Austin
- DUANE R. VALZ, VP & Associate General Counsel, Global
- 17 Patents, Yahoo

- MR. ADKINSON: Thanks very much for staying on
- for the final panel, which will examine a wide variety
- of issues, including the changes in legal doctrines that
- 22 affect the value and licensing of patents that have been
- 23 brought around by the recent Supreme Court decisions on
- obviousness, declaratory judgments and exhaustion.
- The panel will also discuss the role of

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 unpredictability and notice in the IP marketplace. Of
```

- 2 course, that came up at the end of the last panel and
- 3 extensively during the discussions of the first panel.
- We have a perfect panel here to address these
- 5 issues. Professor Michael Meurer is Michael's Faculty
- 6 Research Scholar and professor of law at Boston
- 7 University School of Law where he has taught since 1999.
- 8 He previously taught in the economics department at Duke
- 9 and then at the law school at the University of Buffalo.
- 10 He's the author of numerous articles and books examining
- 11 the patent system, including one published this year
- 12 which was co-authored with James Bessen entitled "Patent
- 13 Failure: How Judges, Bureaucrats and Lawyers Put Innovators
 At Risk."
- Then we'll hear from Professor John Duffy who's
- the Oswald Colclough research professor of law at George
- 17 Washington University School of Law. He's previously
- 18 taught at Cardozo, William & Mary and University of
- 19 Chicago. Professor Duffy previously clerked for Justice
- 20 Scalia and has published numerous articles on patent law
- and other topics and is the coauthor of a case book on
- 22 patent law.
- Then we'll hear from Professor Joseph Miller,
- 24 who has been the associate professor at Lewis and Clark
- 25 Law School since 2002 and is visiting associate

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 professor of law at Georgia Law School. He previously
```

- 2 served as a law clerk to our keynote speaker and worked
- 3 as an attorney at the Antitrust Division at DOJ. His
- 4 research examines patent law questions within the
- 5 larger legal structure that governs competitive market
- 6 processes.
- 7 Then we will hear from Duane Valz, who is the
- 8 vice president and associate general counsel for Global
- 9 Patents at Yahoo!. In that role, he leads a team of
- 10 attorneys and engineers responsible for the company's
- worldwide invention harvesting, patent filings and
- 12 portfolio management. He also advises on other IP
- 13 related matters. Previously Duane served as director of
- intellectual property for Quantum Corporation.
- 15 Finally you'll hear from Jeff Kushan, who is a
- 16 partner at Sidley & Austin in Washington. He counsels
- and represents companies and trade associations on a
- 18 diverse range of intellectual property matters,
- including serving as lead counsel in amicus filings by
- 20 companies and trade associations in significant patent
- 21 law appeals. In 2003 he was named one of the top 45
- lawyers in the U.S. under the age of 45 by American
- 23 Lawyer Magazine.
- So we're really looking forward to a great
- lineup, and if Mike will start us off.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 PROFESSOR MEURER: Thanks very much. I hope I
```

- 2 haven't alienated everybody already, but maybe I will by
- 3 the end.
- The title of the book, by the way, was of course
- 5 written by our editor, so I didn't have the spine I
- 6 guess to resist. We had a kind of bland title
- 7 originally.
- 8 I want to thank John Squires for setting up a
- 9 couple remarks. The first one is that the name is
- 10 pronounced Meurer. It rhymes with lawyer, so that's an
- 11 easier nonionic for you, and I'll get to the second one
- in a moment.
- So this book, with the provocative title of
- 14 Patent Failure, is so named because we argue that the
- 15 patent system has failed to perform like a system of
- 16 property, so competition law lawyers in here might have
- heard that patents are property, just like any other
- 18 kind of property, but I think John is quite right too
- point out that patents are property, just like mortgage
- 20 backed securities are property, that the patent system
- 21 unfortunately doesn't share all of the features of a
- 22 system of property rights that might pertain to real
- 23 property.
- So economists have produced a lot of evidence
- 25 that shows that strong property rights encourage

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 investments, transactions and economic growth, but
```

- 2 there's quite a bit of economic evidence that says that
- 3 the patent system has a mixed record when you use the
- 4 same kinds of studies to look at the same kinds of
- 5 indicators of economic success.
- The best evidence for the patent system is
- 7 patents as they pertain to pharmaceuticals, but
- 8 otherwise the conclusion in our book that is supported
- 9 by a lot of other economic evidence is that the patent
- 10 law system fails as a property right system, and it
- 11 actually imposes a tax on most innovators outside of
- 12 chemicals and pharmaceuticals.
- 13 John mentioned that we attribute this failure
- 14 mostly to a failure of notice, so all the lawyers in
- 15 here are quite familiar with what notice is supposed to
- do to make a system of real property work effectively.
- 17 Strangers will take notice of a property line
- 18 when they're investing in a structure. They don't
- 19 accidentally build a structure like an office tower
- 20 across someone else's property line. They either move
- 21 the location of the structure or they negotiate to
- 22 purchase the rights they need to situate the structure
- 23 where they want it.
- It doesn't work that way in the patent system.
- We identify in the book much evidence to show that

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 infringement takes mainly two forms: People who failed
```

- 2 to license before investing in new technologies, people
- 3 who would want to, and other people who spot some
- 4 patents, try to design around the patents and fail
- 5 because they can't clearly pin down the scope of the
- 6 property rights.
- 7 Besides the Lemley and Cotropia study, there is
- 8 some evidence in our book of the same sort that says
- 9 that piracy is rarely proven in litigated cases. We
- 10 estimate that only in about 4 percent of the cases is
- 11 the defendant ever shown to be a copyist.
- We have a substantial body of data that we
- analyze to understand what causes the hazard of patent
- 14 litigation for a defendant. The term hazard here means
- 15 the expected number of lawsuits that will be filed
- against you in a particular year, and more specifically,
- we look at publicly traded American firms from 1984 to
- 18 1999.
- 19 After controlling for firm size, stock market
- 20 capitalization, industry, date and other factors, the
- 21 risk of facing patent infringement increases with R&D
- intensity. It turns out actually to be a pretty good
- 23 indicator of the risk that you will face of a patent
- 24 lawsuit.
- Ask managers in your firm, how much do we spend

For The Record, Inc.

```
on R&D, that's a very good predictor of the likelihood
```

- 2 you will be a defendant in a patent lawsuit. Why?
- 3 Because high R&D, means that with some luck, you will
- 4 succeed at innovating. That means you will introduce
- 5 new products. That means you will be exposed to a
- 6 patent lawsuit.
- 7 Take a look across technologies at the
- 8 performance of the patent system, and I think you get a
- 9 further hint that there's a serious notice problem at
- 10 play in the patent system. When we take a look that the
- 11 probability that any patent could be in a lawsuit, that
- averages to be about 2 percent per year over this time
- 13 period that I mentioned before.
- 14 If we normalize to one, the chances that any
- 15 patent when it was -- when it is born will end up
- 16 ultimately being considered by the Federal Circuit on a
- 17 claim construction issue, normalize that to one, we'll
- 18 be able, as you move down that column, to do some
- 19 comparisons.
- 20 Finally, if you move to the right-hand column
- 21 and you use a standard technique of economists to
- measure the value of patents in aggregate, in our
- 23 research we find that the average patents, which has
- 24 this 2 percent probability of being in a lawsuit, has a
- 25 value of \$78,000. This is in 1992 dollars.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              Switch to chemicals, and here we're not talking
 2
      about the chemical industry, but we are talking about
      patents that are to chemical structures, so this will
 3
 4
      include much of the pharmaceutical industries activity.
 5
      We see that the probability of one of those patents in a
 6
      lawsuit is only 1.1 percent, just about half of the
 7
      typical patent.
              We think that is true because much of the patent
 8
 9
      claiming in this area is structural. When you look at
10
      an organic chemical that is sketched out in a
      two-dimensional picture or verbally expressed according
11
12
      to conventions that are well understood by chemists, you
13
      have a clearly defined property right.
14
              Skip down to the biotech row, and you see that
15
      the probability of a patent lawsuit jumps up to 3.2
      percent. That might be because of instability in the
16
17
      law in this area. It might be because it's a new
      technology. I think it is also, to a large extent, due
18
19
      to the difference between biomolecules and traditional
20
      small molecules. It's a difference that's explained by
21
      the tendency, when you're trying to capture a property
      right with a polymer, to speak about it in functional
22
23
      terms.
24
              That language, functional versus structural, I
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

think is a big part of the problem that we have with the

25

```
1 patent system. The more functional the claiming is, the
```

- 2 harder it is for anyone to understand what the property
- 3 rights are.
- 4 Move over to the middle column, and you see that
- 5 claim construction, even though these chemical patents
- 6 are extremely valuable, they end up getting to the
- 7 Federal Circuit for claim construction less often than
- 8 the typical patent. Not true for biotech, not true for
- 9 software, not true for business method patents.
- 10 With business method patents, we find an
- incredible 13.7 percent of those patents will end up
- being featured in a patent lawsuit. So when you look at
- software, to go over to the right, you can see software
- patents tend to be less valuable, chemical patents more
- 15 valuable, and we think it is because the notice function
- of the patent system is performing much better for
- 17 chemicals than it is for software or for other
- 18 functionally claimed technologies.
- The notice problem in our research appears to be
- 20 growing worse across all technologies including
- 21 chemicals. The harm from notice, as you might expect,
- 22 falls especially on large capital intensive firms that
- 23 are most vulnerable as defendants.
- We conclude in the book that the notice problem,
- 25 not low quality patent examination, deserves the most

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 attention from patent reformers, so if you define
```

- 2 quality broadly to include fuzzy boundaries and to
- 3 include other notice problems, then I would say, yes, we
- 4 have a quality problem, but I don't think it's a
- 5 question of getting the right prior art before the
- 6 examiner. I think it's a more fundamental problem of
- 7 getting the system to look more like a property system.
- 8 The book goes into detail in examining four
- 9 dimensions of this notice failure. Number one, fuzzy
- 10 boundaries, marking the difficulty in claim
- 11 construction, the work by Judge Kimberly Moore showing
- 12 us that about 35 percent of District Court
- 13 claim construction are reversed by the Federal Circuit.
- 14 Interesting recent evidence, and I wish I could
- 15 remember the name of the author, someone might shout it
- out, but there's a recent study that finds the more
- 17 experience a District Court Judge has with claim
- 18 construction, the worse they do. In an environment like
- 19 that, it's really difficult to counsel your clients
- about how to stay outside of someone else's property
- 21 right.
- 22 Hidden boundary information caused by
- 23 continuation practice is a big problem. More
- 24 fundamental maybe is that property rights in areas like
- 25 software are untethered to possession. We really need

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 to get serious about disclosure requirements when it
```

- 2 comes to software patents and generally to kinds of
- 3 technology that are functionally claimed.
- 4 Because of the first three problems and because
- of other considerations, we have an enormous search cost
- 6 difficulty. You don't have that sort of difficultly
- 7 when you're searching real property title. It's
- 8 relatively cheap to find other people's property rights,
- 9 and we have a good recording system. We have a disaster
- in terms of the recording system for patent-based
- 11 property rights, and on top of that, we have so many of
- 12 these property rights, that the cost of doing a serious
- 13 search in most areas is prohibitive.
- 14 The consequences are pretty clear. There's
- 15 little search or clearance. A survey of IPO members
- 16 found that a large fraction of them, a majority of them
- 17 did not do product clearance. We have an insurance
- 18 market failure. We have the puzzle, that if you're a
- maker of software you can get insurance against the
- 20 hazard of being sued in a copyright suit or a trade
- 21 secret suit but not a patent suit, the same software
- 22 subject matter.
- In the insurance market, I know a couple big
- insurers like Chubb and members of the Lloyd's syndicate
- 25 have tried to offer patent defendant insurance, and they

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 haven't been able to successfully underwrite that. The
```

- 2 consequences is a lot of inadvertent infringement.
- 3 So that leads to the conclusion, one of the two
- 4 big punch lines in the book is displayed in the
- 5 following two graphs. We use a couple different
- 6 techniques to calculate the value of patent portfolios,
- 7 so here is one of our techniques used in the dotted line
- 8 to display a 92 billions of dollars, the worldwide value
- 9 of patent portfolios to publicly traded American firms
- in the chemical and pharmaceutical industries.
- The solid line down below is the aggregate
- 12 U.S. litigation costs to alleged infringers. There's a
- 13 big gap between those two numbers, and as it should be,
- 14 the profit derived from patents is far above the costs
- 15 associated with patent litigation, so the patent system
- is clearly going to provide a subsidy. It has a chance
- 17 to work as it should as an incentive for investment in
- 18 innovation.
- Things look all little bit grim though when we
- 20 switch to all other industries, so looking at the dotted
- line, we see the value of patents in all other
- industries. How did we calculate that? Well, for this
- 23 particular graph, we calculated that value by looking at
- 24 the stock market reaction to the portfolio of patents
- 25 that are held by these publicly traded firms.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              We checked that against a second method of
 2
      calculating value. The second method is to look at the
 3
      renewal decision, payments of maintenance fees, so
 4
      you've got the judgment of research managers in one
 5
      case, the judgment of investors in another case, and
 6
      they give pretty similar answers to the value of
 7
      patents. More important than the total number, the
      total value number though, is that these two different
 8
 9
      methods of estimation are consistent across
10
      technologies, across industries, across time.
              Likewise, our measures of cost also seem to
11
12
      comport to other measures that are available.
13
      particular measure of cost is again using stock market
14
      reactions to the filing of a lawsuit.
15
              First observation that's important to understand
16
      is that we find that more than half of the cost
17
      associated with the filing of a patent lawsuit is things
      other than payments to attorneys. Payments to attorneys
18
19
      are less than 50 percent of the expected cost of a
      patent lawsuit. It may even be as little as a tenth of
20
21
      the expected cost of a patent lawsuit.
22
              It's the business disruption cost that really
23
      matters, and now what happens to this time series right
24
      here? Looking from '84 to '94, we see that line move
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

around, but not clearly rise. In '94 -- actually also

25

```
in the book we pin the date down to about '92, we see an
```

- 2 explosion of patent litigation costs.
- I would argue with Judge Michel that we also
- 4 have an explosion of lawsuits, but that's not quite so
- 5 important. What really matters is this explosion in
- 6 cost, and you see that the data ends in '99. In the
- 7 book, we have another bit of evidence that it pulls us
- 8 out to 2004, and you naturally will probably be asking:
- 9 Can we update this to 2008?
- 10 We can try to, so we're starting to work to
- 11 extend this time series out to 2008, but the data that
- we have that extends out to 2004 says that if anything,
- 13 the problem has gotten worse, and when we look at the
- timing, we attribute it in large part to decisions by
- 15 the Federal Circuit in the '90s that weakened the notice
- 16 function of the patent system.
- So we think that's the first place we need to
- look to for reform, and perhaps as many people have said
- 19 today, we're starting to get some of that. So maybe
- 20 Bilski is a step in the right direction.
- MS. MICHEL: Thank you. Thank you very much.
- 22 Next we will have Professor John Duffy.
- PROFESSOR DUFFY: Well, I am here to talk a
- little bit about the obviousness doctrine or the
- 25 non-obviousness doctrine, and I wanted to give -- I

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 think the program was designed to set forth questions
```

- 2 that the Federal Trade Commission should investigate in
- 3 a supplement to its last report that it did five years
- 4 ago.
- 5 The last time the FTC had a report, I testified
- 6 there too, and there was at least some testimony that
- 7 criticized the then existing teaching suggestion
- 8 motivation test, which was at the time the dominant
- 9 lower court metric for judging patent validity under the
- 10 obviousness doctrine.
- 11 Indeed, one of the witnesses from the Patent
- 12 Office actually said that the problem with the teaching
- 13 suggestion motivation test was that it required the
- 14 Patent Office or challenger to connect the dots very,
- very clearly in order to prove that something was
- obvious, and therefore unpatentable. My testimony, to
- some degree, supported that and gave a theoretical
- 18 framework as to how we should think about obviousness.
- The Supreme Court has changed the law in the KSR
- decision, and by good fortune and a little bit of luck,
- 21 I had a little involvement in that case, so today I want
- 22 to talk about how that case affected the law and where
- 23 we should go next, and maybe what the FTC can do to be
- 24 helpful in this process of developing the law.
- I will say that the FTC was very helpful the

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 last time. Because I was involved in litigating KSR,
```

- 2 one of the things that was important in that case was
- 3 getting the Supreme Court's attention to the issue, and
- 4 one of the things that was prominently displayed to get
- 5 the Supreme Court's attention was the FTC report, which
- 6 I think was very helpful in sort of providing a basis to
- 7 tell the Supreme Court: This is a very important issue;
- 8 if this issue is decided incorrectly, which we thought
- 9 and I thought it was, then the patent system cannot work
- 10 effectively. You will have a bad system, so this is
- 11 really the heart and soul of the patent system.
- So I encourage -- the FTC has done some I think
- very good work and influential work in its last report,
- and this new set of hearings or new set of -- this new
- 15 initiative is I think to push the law forward I think a
- 16 little bit further.
- 17 In KSR I think the Supreme Court did two
- 18 fundamental things, which advanced the law and made law
- better, and one thing, which is a problem, which remains
- 20 a problem -- the two things which it did, which I think
- 21 advanced law, is to say that the teaching suggestion
- 22 motivation test is not the be all and end all of
- 23 obviousness analysis. It clearly held that that cannot
- 24 be the sole test of patentability.
- I think that was important because I think that

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 there's no way that that test gave us any purchase on
```

- 2 the policies that the obviousness doctrine is trying to
- 3 get at.
- 4 The second thing that the KSR case did is that
- 5 it reaffirmed in quite clear terms and I think for the
- 6 first time that the person of ordinary skill in the art,
- 7 in other words normal innovators, have creativity. We
- 8 should not assume that they are automatons who can only
- 9 do exactly what the prior art tells them and no more.
- 10 Rather, people who have skill in the art can create
- 11 things and combine things within some sort of range of
- 12 reasonableness.
- I think that's important because the very policy
- of the obviousness doctrine is designed to protect what
- 15 might be called ordinary innovations. Ordinary
- innovations are things that people would develop on
- 17 their own without the inducement of a patent. This goes
- 18 back to the very language that the Supreme Court used in
- 19 the Graham Versus John Deere case more than 40 years
- 20 ago. So that is a good policy. We don't want those
- 21 things patented because we don't need the inducement of
- 22 a patent in order to call them forward in our economy.
- The last thing that the KSR case did, which many
- 24 critics of KSR have discussed, is that it added
- 25 uncertainty into the law, and I'm here to tell you that

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 those critics have a point. KSR, as appropriate for the
```

- 2 Supreme Court's first attempt to adjudicate this
- doctrine in more than a quarter century, the Supreme
- 4 Court did not fix on a single solution for this
- 5 doctrine, and that is a problem for our law.
- I think it's something that the FTC, now that
- 7 the law has been -- that the Circuit Court law has been,
- 8 in some way destabilized or rejected by the Supreme
- 9 Court, the FTC can help, and the Bar can help in
- building a better law, building a better obviousness
- doctrine, which is central to the patent system.
- 12 There's many ways to prove that KSR did that.
- 13 KSR, if you read it, it talks about: Here's a laundry
- 14 list of principles that we've said in the past should go
- into the obviousness analysis, but they don't really
- come up with any metric or anything that might add
- 17 additional stability to the law, and I think that that
- 18 is a serious criticism of KSR. I still think it was a
- 19 helpful decision, but I think that we can move the law
- forward and produce better law.
- Now I'm going to tell you what I think should be
- done, so just Suzanne should take some notes here.
- MS. MICHEL: I am.
- 24 PROFESSOR DUFFY: This is what I think really
- 25 should happen, and it goes back to the Graham versus

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 John Deere decision, and it goes back to something that
```

- 2 I think Graham versus John Deere did that was precisely
- 3 wrong, precisely wrong.
- In Graham versus John Deere, the Supreme Court,
- 5 for the first time ever, described what used to be
- 6 called objective considerations, which are facts about
- 7 how long it took to develop something, how hard it was
- 8 to develop something, how long a prior art existed that
- 9 needed to be combined, how long the need existed that
- 10 would have called for the innovation if it had been
- 11 obvious.
- 12 They took all of that set of circumstances,
- packaged them together and put them under the label
- 14 secondary considerations. They had never been called
- 15 secondary considerations before, and I think that has --
- and instead as the primary consideration, the Court said
- it's a legal analysis, which is some sort of legal
- 18 formulation, which they didn't provide in Graham versus
- John Deere. They just said figure out whether it's
- 20 obvious.
- The lower courts, ever since that time, have
- been trying to fill in that gap, and even the Supreme
- 23 Court in some post Graham decisions have been trying to
- come up with some verbal formulation that would give us
- 25 a legal test that would help us to decide these issues,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 and I think KSR shows that that project has been a
```

- 2 failure, an utter failure, and that what we need to do
- 3 is to undue, to some degree, what Graham did on this
- 4 crucial point, about whether the objective facts should
- 5 have a secondary consideration, should be just viewed as
- 6 secondary to some sort of verbal formulation.
- 7 There's a reason why Graham actually did this I
- 8 think. In fact, it's quite clear, and I have an article
- 9 about this, and I have a chapter in a book on it too,
- 10 that Graham made a mistake, a factual error about one of
- 11 the cases that it had before it. It didn't read the
- record correctly so it thought that in a case where they
- 13 thought for sure this patent was obvious, they thought
- 14 that the secondary considerations pointed in the other
- direction. But they had just misread a fact.
- It's quite clear from the opinion that they had
- misread a fact, and it's quite clear from all the
- 18 internal court memos which are now publicly available
- 19 and that I read through that they did misread a fact in
- one of the companion cases to Graham. That might
- 21 explain why they pushed secondary considerations to the
- 22 back end of the bus, which I think was wrong.
- I have an article on this, on what I think
- 24 should happen -- thank you. I have an article on this,
- 25 a short article. I intend to come out with a longer

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 piece, but I think that a crucial way to look at this is
```

- 2 a timing approach to patentability, to look at the
- 3 timing of events leading up to the alleged invention,
- 4 and that that should be the crucial, crucial metric by
- 5 which we determine patentability.
- 6 All this goes back to a basic insight which
- 7 actually relates directly to the word obvious. The word
- 8 obvious, the etymology of the word obvious means in the
- 9 street. It's obviam. It's lying in the street, and the
- 10 answer to how can something lie in the street if it's
- 11 valued, if it's really a valuable innovation, how can it
- 12 possibly be obviously, and I think the solution to that
- paradox is that it has not been lying in the street very
- long.
- 15 It's the same thing when you see money lying in
- 16 the street. When you see a \$20 bill lying in the
- 17 street, there's a reason why it's there. It's just been
- 18 dropped. It has not been there for days and days,
- 19 particularly if you're in Manhattan or some other place
- like that. There's actually an economics joke I can
- 21 tell you afterwards that talks about this.
- 22 That is I think a crucial -- that's the way I
- 23 would reorient the doctrine, but I do think that the FTC
- should investigate the so-called secondary
- considerations, and I almost want to banish that term,

For The Record, Inc.

```
just call them objective considerations. It does lead
```

- 2 to a different kind of examination at the Patent Office.
- A lot of times, patent examiners fight back and
- 4 forth with the applicant, with legal tests and verbal
- formulations about: Is there a teaching, is there
- 6 motivation, is there a synergy, was it obvious to try?
- 7 What they should do is they should not spend their
- 8 effort and time on that. They should spend their effort
- 9 and time on trying to document facts about what led up
- 10 to this creation.
- If there's a crucial fact like, Well, the need
- just arose, it just arose last year, and two or three
- people are already trying to patent it, that might be
- 14 strong indication that it's obvious.
- 15 For example, in a Supreme Court case, the Adams
- 16 case, which was a companion to Graham, if the record
- shows that the need -- the need, in that case a need for
- 18 a better battery had existed for decades and that the
- components had existed individually for at least a half
- century and no one had thought to combine them to fill
- 21 the existing need, no matter what verbal formulation you
- use, that is incredibly powerful evidence of non
- obviousness. So I think that that would be a tremendous
- help, and it would change the way examination actually
- works.

For The Record, Inc.

```
The last point that I will make, because I told
 1
 2
      Suzanne I would talk a little bit about this, is on
      patentable subject matter, which is a completely
 3
 4
      different topic, but I do think that patentable subject
 5
      matter issues have introduced a tremendous amount of
      uncertainty into particular industries, and that is
 6
 7
      going to lead to large litigation, just like the last
 8
      presentation suggested, that if you have patentable
 9
      subject matter issues, which will take down both the
10
      good and the bad patents because the patentable subject
      matter doctrine does not work, does not judge merit, it
11
12
      does things by philosophy or by other indicia, that will
13
      create a lot of uncertainty.
14
              Perhaps at least a modest proposal is that the
15
      agency should do fact finding before it does the
      patentable subject matter inquiry, at least accepting
16
      perhaps the most blatant cases, because if we're going
17
      to have to decide very hard questions about patentable
18
19
      subject matter, we should make sure we're looking at
20
      patents where it's going to make a difference, where the
21
      subject matter is new, useful and nonobvious, and then
22
      decide it in that context rather than in the context of
23
      a junk patent where people might say, Well, that's
24
      clearly -- that's wrong, that's just wrong, that should
25
      not be patented.
```

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 We should actually look at real innovations and
```

- 2 say -- decide whether that sort of thing, some of which
- 3 could be very socially valuable can and should be
- 4 patented, so that's my only suggestion on patentable
- 5 subject matter, and I will stop apparently on schedule.
- 6 Thank you.
- 7 MS. MICHEL: Thank you. And now we have
- 8 Professor Joe Miller.
- 9 PROFESSOR MILLER: Thank you. It's an honor to
- 10 be here with such distinguished panelists through the
- 11 day. I've enjoyed it tremendously, and I appreciate the
- opportunity to share some thoughts with you.
- 13 The Supreme Court case that Suzanne and Erika
- 14 asked me to talk about is MedImmune. Todd Dickinson
- 15 mentioned MedImmune a little bit in his remarks. This
- was a January 2007 decision, just a few months before
- 17 KSR, a decision that rightly received a great deal more
- 18 press attention.
- 19 MedImmune is a procedural decision. It's about
- whether a paid up licensee can bring a declaratory
- 21 judgment action attacking the validity or applicability
- of the underlying patent. The Supreme Court, reversing
- 23 the Federal Circuit, concluded that a paid up licensee
- 24 can bring a declaratory judgment action.
- The reason the Federal Circuit had rejected such

For The Record, Inc.

```
a notion is the Federal Circuit had approached these DJ,
```

- which is the phrase I will know use to mean declaratory
- judgment -- that the reason why a paid up licensee
- 4 couldn't bring a DJ action is because only those under a
- 5 threat of eminent suit, people with a reasonable
- 6 apprehension of suit, should be able to bring such
- 7 actions, and of course a paid up licensee is the epitome
- 8 of a person who has no apprehension of suit. They are a
- 9 licensee after all. The Supreme Court used a very
- 10 different framework.
- I want to talk about three consequences of that
- 12 conclusion, that in MedImmune, a paid up licensee can
- bring a DJ action, and I'm going to order my
- 14 consequences from more concrete and actual to more
- speculative and fanciful, so you know at the end I'll be
- 16 talking about law professor ideas, right, the most
- 17 fanciful of all.
- 18 So first, DJ jurisdiction in the Federal Circuit
- 19 after MedImmune. The paid up licensee question is
- 20 interesting, but perhaps less interesting than the
- 21 question of DJ jurisdiction as to punitive infringers
- 22 who are not yet licensees, who are considering, do I
- 23 want to take a license or not, maybe instead I want to
- 24 go to court, clear my path forward by eliminating this
- 25 patent either on non-infringement grounds or on validity

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 grounds.
- Well, the Federal Circuit's embrace of MedImmune
- 3 was both swift and total. That's because MedImmune had
- 4 made it quite clear in footnote 11 of the opinion that
- 5 the Supreme Court thought this reasonable apprehension
- of suit test was a complete error, and so the Federal
- 7 Circuit quickly turned around, I credit them for it,
- 8 right, swiftly and completely. They said, Okay we're
- 9 not going to do things that way anymore.
- As a consequence, right, people can bring DJ
- 11 actions to challenge validity, to challenge infringement
- 12 as infringers, much more reasonable in cases like
- 13 SanDisk, cases like Micron against Mosaid, and there's
- 14 two important consequences for licensing I think of this
- 15 very complete embrace of a much easier standard for the
- 16 DJ jurisdiction.
- One relates to the marking requirement in patent
- 18 law. If you're selling a product and you're a patentee,
- if you want damages to accrue, you have to put the
- 20 patent number on the product. Of course, if you don't
- 21 care whether damages accrue, don't bother, but you can't
- 22 collect damages absent actual notice.
- So one consequence of MedImmune, in a chain of
- reasoning, is that if you have failed to mark, and you
- want damages to accrue, you have to provide actual

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 notice, right? I think I own this patent, I think your
```

- 2 practice infringes.
- 3 Sending that letter, which will get damages to
- 4 start to accrue, will also give your opponent
- 5 declaratory judgment jurisdiction under MedImmune, so
- 6 you can no longer start the damages clock and keep your
- 7 opponent out of the courthouse. They now match. They
- 8 didn't before. They do now. What that means is failing
- 9 to mark is more expensive, so maybe people will mark
- 10 more, who knows, and the patentees who have failed to
- 11 mark have less leverage in licensings than they did
- 12 before at the margins.
- 13 Also, a much bigger circle of potential
- 14 litigants can now come into court. I mentioned Micron
- 15 against *Mosaid*. This is an instance where the DJ
- 16 plaintiff received some threat letters. Three years go
- by because the patentee is litigating against other
- 18 people in the industry. This person in the industry
- 19 finally comes into court, and the Federal Circuit says,
- 20 sure, there's jurisdiction. They were threatening lots
- of other folks, you were the next logical target, they
- 22 sent you a letter a few years ago, of course it's okay
- for you to be here. That's a much bigger circle of
- litigants that patentees now have to take in mind as
- 25 they develop their licensing strategy.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              Another response to MedImmune licensing terms,
 2
      of course patentees are going to try to get back what
 3
      they lost in MedImmune, which is a more stable regime
 4
      where they can tell who is going to be suing them and
 5
      who won't be suing them. The most natural expedient,
 6
      getting someone to agree in a license that they will not
 7
      challenge your patent is probably unenforceable.
 8
              I say probably because the cases still holding
 9
      date from the early '70s in the wake of Lear against
10
      Adkins, the Supreme Court case overturning licensee
      estoppel, and we just don't have recent information
11
12
      about that, except in the trademark area. Recently,
13
      both the Ninth Circuit and the Second Circuit struck
14
      down no challenge clauses in a trademark context, so
15
      perhaps it would be equally true in patent law.
16
              Now, are there functional substitutes for no
17
      challenges clauses? Of course there are. The better
      they are at functionally approximating no challenge
18
19
      clauses, of course the harder they should be to enforce
20
      because no challenge clauses are unenforceable, so we'll
21
      see what happens there.
22
              Assuming there is no good substitute, of course
23
      what this means is that patentees will need to work into
24
      the price of their license the risk that their licensee
25
      will sue them.
                      Now, on very strong patents that's not
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

```
going to change the price of the patent very much
```

- 2 because the risk of being sued is low.
- For weak patents, it's going to increase the
- 4 licensing rate a lot or it should, right, but of course
- 5 those are the very patents where licensees say, I don't
- 6 want to pay a lot more for that, it's weak, I think the
- 7 consequence is for weak patents, more likely litigation
- 8 than licensing, okay.
- 9 Now, the most sort of speculative or strange
- thing I want to say relates to joint defense agreements.
- 11 You can think of these as joint attack agreements in the
- declaratory judgment context. Because we broadened that
- 13 circle of litigants who can challenge patent rights,
- 14 there ought to be more people interested in challenging
- 15 them and maybe even working together to challenge them:
- 16 A bunch of people in the industry, hey, let's cooperate.
- The problem, the biggest stumbling block is some
- 18 case law from again the '60s and '70s saying, Well,
- 19 problem here, right, you cooperate too vigorously,
- you're engaged in a group boycott, that's an antitrust
- 21 violation, okay. Now, that's serious, shouldn't violate
- 22 the antitrust laws.
- However, I don't think that's the right way to
- think about a joint defense agreement because, as has
- 25 already been pointed out, patents are probabilistic in

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 nature. Patents are not like selling sugar beets to the
```

- 2 sugar refiner. Patents are not like selling milk to the
- 3 cheese maker. I am mentioning some fact patterns from
- 4 group boycott cases. That's not what patents are like.
- 5 What is a joint defense agreement or a joint
- 6 attack agreement? I think the better way to think of
- 7 it, and certainly from an antitrust perspective, is it's
- 8 a research and development joint venture. What are they
- 9 researching? The status of the patent, right? Is it
- 10 really valid? Is it really this big? That's
- 11 information.
- Research and development joint ventures designed
- 13 to develop information receive actually quite
- 14 deferential antirust review, and they should, right, and
- 15 I think that's frankly what joint defense agreements
- 16 are. So that's really far out I can tell by how much
- 17 eyebrows went like this, right, but I think it's an idea
- 18 that really needs to be considered, and I need to stop.
- 19 So thank you.
- MS. MICHEL: Great. We will go from the
- 21 fanciful world of law professors, but actually I thought
- 22 that was a very good idea, to the real hard core world
- of day-to-day licensing with Duane Valz.
- MR. VALZ: Thanks, Suzanne. It's been an
- 25 interesting day, and in many ways I feel like much of my

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 presentation has already been given, but to that degree,
```

- 2 perhaps it just means that I was prescient because I
- 3 think there are a lot of resident themes with speakers
- 4 going back to the first panel.
- 5 So in thinking about appearing on the panel, I
- 6 was definitely familiar with the FTC's report, and I
- 7 think consistent with everyone else's remarks, found it
- 8 to be very comprehensive, hitting a lot of key themes
- 9 and points, and in looking back at the report before
- 10 preparing my remarks, I actually have seen that it
- 11 itself was very prescient.
- 12 A lot of its recommendations ended up coming to
- pass, whether through changes at the Patent Office or
- 14 through some of the judicial decisions that have come
- down, some of which this panel is charged with talking
- 16 about it.
- 17 What also struck me was at that time, the
- 18 concern was more so about the impact of patent law and
- 19 policy on competition generally, and in this panel or
- 20 this initial set of hearings, the focus seems to be more
- 21 so on the market for licensing within the industry, and
- so some of my remarks will be looking at what's happened
- 23 between then and now and what kinds of things we may be
- learned -- we may be able to learn from that.
- 25 My first point is perhaps my conclusion really,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 that what we can see in the past five or more years is
```

- 2 that industries driven by scientific and technological
- 3 innovation are hindered by patent system flaws more than
- 4 benefitted by them. I think there was a concern in 2002
- 5 that there was a cabal of established companies who were
- 6 benefitting disproportionately from patents and perhaps
- 7 that was hurting competition in the form of new
- 8 entrants.
- 9 Given the amount of focus that's been put by
- 10 established companies on trying to get reform through
- and the support that reform has had, we could see that a
- 12 lot of those dynamics weren't true then and perhaps are
- more so not true now, and some of the new dynamics
- 14 perhaps should definitely carry more weight.
- 15 Many remarkable changes have been made as other
- speakers have pointed out. It's been mostly judicial.
- 17 There has been some changes at the US PTO concerning
- re-exam, the availability of it, ex parte and inter
- 19 parties rather, and as we all know though, legislative
- 20 reform is stuck.
- So it's the general perception that the system
- 22 as a whole is still out of balance. I may not share a
- lot of the reasons for that with Professor Meurer, but I
- 24 think over the course of the day, a lot of the panelists
- 25 have definitely focused on the fact that the industry

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 has become more litigation driven than value promoting
```

- 2 licensing driven, and I would put a focus on that
- 3 distinction.
- 4 I think one of the animating concerns is the
- 5 role that non-practicing entities plays in the market
- 6 and whether or not they distort the dynamics of true
- 7 innovation, and I would argue that when we get to a
- 8 point, someone mentioned marking, it seems to be quite
- 9 unjust that if you actually are a firm producing
- 10 products and services in the market, that if you don't
- 11 mark, you might compromise damages, but if you are an
- 12 aggressive, aggregating company or non-practicing
- entity, you can get a patent from anyone for any price,
- and you're not subject to the same constraints.
- 15 That seems to be an anachronistic aspect of the
- patent law, and in relation to actually pursuing
- technology transfer where you're exchanging technology
- 18 of value, people want to do business with you, and
- patents may either be incidental to that or a key
- component, it's odd and also anachronistic that perhaps
- 21 the values being extracted by licensing and litigation
- 22 entities far outweigh the amount of value that's
- 23 exchanged on a monetary basis by firms actually doing
- 24 business with each other.
- So to those points, I think damages reform and

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 venue reform are still two key elements of patent reform
```

- 2 that haven't been addressed by judicial cases and still
- 3 remain ahead of us. I'll talk a little bit about that
- 4 later, and generally talk about some points that might
- 5 help to get to a better calibration system.
- So in looking back, we can look at the concerns
- 7 over patents and the perceptions versus the realities,
- 8 so in the early part of the decade, there was a general
- 9 concern that patents had become too strong, and there
- were some reasonable points there, and that patent
- 11 owners wielded too much power.
- 12 And at the time, while dynamics sort of were of
- 13 a general cross industry nature, the focus was often on
- 14 growth industries such as software and the Internet, and
- 15 I think this is when you really saw an expansion in the
- 16 number of software and other Internet related patents
- being issued, and some of the more trivial examples were
- 18 getting headlines, and people perceived that that
- 19 characterized the whole industry, and there was also a
- 20 concern then that new entrants would be deterred by
- 21 patent thickets and innovation would thereby be impeded.
- I think particularly in the high tech space and
- 23 I think more particularly in the software and Internet
- space, you've seen different realities actually emerge.
- Open technology development has thrived. It's a driving

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 force of innovation. Start ups have not gone away.
```

- 2 There's still certain lower barriers to entry and
- 3 success in the space.
- 4 As Mallun mentioned earlier, those small
- 5 entities that are actually producing great technology
- 6 along side IP will get noticed and will do really well
- 7 in the industry, and innovation really in all forms has
- 8 thrived.
- 9 I think rather than consolidate excessive power
- 10 through patent related exercises, successful new economy
- 11 companies have become beleaquered by defensive
- 12 litigations brought by NPEs, and these new participants
- have fueled a secondary market for patents which has
- really intensified this whole idea of licensing without
- 15 true technology transfer which helps to support
- 16 innovation.
- 17 Looking at the impact of judicial reform, I
- 18 won't get too deep into the cases, certainly most of
- 19 these cases have had the impact of tempering patent
- 20 power. All of them have had the effect of curbing the
- 21 power of independent patents as well as patentholders,
- but have they really impacted market competition and
- 23 value promoting activities initially surmised? I would
- 24 argue slightly but perhaps not, and if we look at
- licensing, which is one of the focuses of the panel,

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 that becomes clear.
- Obviousness, as Professor Duffy pointed out, the
- 3 KSR really had some benefits. It's made obviousness
- 4 easier to prove in litigation, but that's where you
- 5 really have experts a lot of time, and focus who can get
- 6 to what was going on at the time, can ferret up some of
- 7 the objective considerations and really get to the heart
- 8 of the matter.
- 9 When you're trying to get patents at the Patent
- 10 Office, one of the virtues of TSM was that it was an
- objective set of criteria. You had to actually do the
- 12 research and do the work and find references, and while
- that may be overly tight, the opposite of what we have
- 14 now is more room for subjective judgments to creep in
- 15 about what a person having ordinary skill in the art may
- or may not have been able to put together at a time that
- another reference existed, and that leads to
- 18 inconsistency.
- In examination practices in terms of licensing,
- this doesn't really come to bear that greatly because
- 21 that determination of subjective factors requires so
- 22 much research and time, especially in multi-patent
- 23 licensing deals, I don't really believe that any of us
- in the industry really pay a lot of attention to KSR
- when we're evaluating. We're still going to do the

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 rough and ready thing and look at the actual references,
```

- 2 so the impact of this case has been let's say marginal
- 3 on licensing.
- In terms of willfulness and declaratory relief,
- 5 Seagate did bring welcome improvements, and perhaps it
- 6 has promoted a little more investigation of patented
- 7 technology for product clearance and possible
- 8 licensing, removing some of the research hazards
- 9 associated with looking at patents. However, combined
- 10 with MedImmune and SanDisk and its progeny, which makes
- is very easy to trigger litigation, if you are on the
- 12 other side of a patent discussion, it's really caused
- 13 litigants to rush to the courthouse.
- 14 So there's no prospect, there's a lower prospect
- 15 for treble damages from pre-litigation discussions and a
- 16 higher risk of being hauled into a forum that you didn't
- 17 choose, so NPEs particularly go straight to court
- 18 without prior notice.
- I can tell you, we have about 24 active
- 20 defensive litigations growing from about nine just a
- 21 year and a half ago. About 19 of those are in the
- 22 Eastern District of Texas, and it kind of flips Detkin's
- and a few other folks stats on its head. It's the same
- thing with Mallun Yen. We have a 80/20 split, but it's
- in the wrong direction, and this is some of the

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 consequences. Unfortunately, I think Seagate is a great
```

- decision, but combined with some others, it's had those
- 3 kinds of effects.
- 4 So more and better calibration is required. I
- 5 think NPE litigation does suppress value-added licensing
- 6 activity and drains resources from marketplaces.
- 7 There is a whole discussion about transparency,
- 8 and I think one of the things that companies actually
- 9 doing tech transfer and value added licensing suffer
- 10 from is the fact that it's done confidentially. A lot
- of these entities becoming more bold and non-practicing
- 12 entities can talk about their facts and figures and how
- much they're doing and how much they're helping small
- 14 inventors.
- As Mallun had volunteered, I think I would be
- 16 happy to help with creating more marketplace
- transparency, whether it's on settlements, on licensing
- their programs like peer to patent. We need to
- demystify a lot of the ambiguities that survive around
- 20 patents, and I don't believe that it's just a matter of
- 21 a reserving patents only for compositions of matter as
- 22 maybe Professor Meurer suggested.
- Defining patent boundaries is difficult when
- you're dealing with intangibles technologies, but
- 25 Silicon Valley thrives on solving difficult problems and

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 I think we can here too.
```

- 2 My last point: In Re Bilski does preserve a
- 3 legitimate role for software and business method
- 4 patents, but certainly the machines test and
- 5 transformation test of the Federal Circuit leaves a lot
- of uncertainties about what the contours of those tests
- 7 are.
- 8 Unfortunately we're going to have a lot of small
- 9 skirmishes around that, and it hasn't created a lot of
- 10 certainty. I think a lot of folks, if you ask them, can
- 11 say, okay, maybe we can live with slightly narrower
- 12 rights, but just tell us what we need to do, especially
- when we go to the Patent Office. It's getting ugly
- there after *Bilski* in terms of what's expected and the
- 15 uncertainty around that.
- I would also -- the FTC does have an
- international component, and I would like to offer that
- 18 it would be great to have some notion of safe harbor
- 19 claiming. If you do these things, you can meet Section
- 20 101 requirements. It shouldn't be that difficult, and
- 21 that if we can have that internationally where we can
- 22 harmonize around Section 101 and harmonize inventive
- 23 step with non-obviousness internationally, that will
- 24 promote U.S. industry and help us all have a better
- functioning patent system, not just here, but globally.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              MS. MICHEL: Thank you. Very practical
 2
      thoughts, exactly what we needed. Thank you very much,
 3
      and now we'll hear from Jeff Kushan from more of a
 4
      biotech perspective.
 5
              MR. KUSHAN: I first want to thank the FTC for
 6
      having me come back again. We had a program a couple
 7
      weeks ago which was equally thought provoking and I
 8
      think very productive. I also want to thank my
 9
      panelists because each one of their presentations I
10
      think has really had a very nice, thoughtful and I think
      very practical perspective to the points they were
11
12
      making.
13
              I think they are pulling out from the five or
14
      six or ten years of policy debate we've been going
15
      through and really the things I think are the
16
      variables affecting the dynamics you're seeing in
17
      litigation and in uncertainty.
18
              I was asked to cover a few points, and since I
19
      have the mike, I will not let go of it until I talk
20
      about one thing, but when you look at the landscape of
21
      cases that have come down over the past decade, it is
      having impacts. I would say some of the impacts are
22
```

I also have had the benefit of working on a For The Record, Inc.

in the other sectors.

less dramatic in the life science sector than they are

23

24

```
1 couple of these cases so far, but so John's ahead
```

- of me in the standings. The question of DJ standing,
- 3 that is obviously -- as we predicted in the case, it's
- 4 going to have an impact on how parties write their
- 5 contracts and how they have license terms, and I think
- one of the questions that comes to mind is the asymmetry
- of the standard. When you're the patent owner, you
- 8 can't sue, and when you're the defendant, you can. That
- 9 really does have a big impact on how you behave.
- 10 Some of the questions that creep into licensing
- decisions now, if you do something, can I terminate
- 12 your license or if you bring suit, can I terminate your
- 13 license and really put you at the equivalent risk to me
- 14 facing a DJ action?
- 15 Patent exhaustion is kind of -- that decision in
- the supply chain kind of context doesn't really fit
- 17 perfectly into the biotech or life sciences sector.
- 18 There's some overlap, but I think that's going to have a
- 19 fairly limited.
- Obviousness is a big issue, and I really
- 21 did like the idea that John had of taking the sort of
- 22 secondary out of this equation because that tends to be
- the most powerful insight into why something isn't
- obvious or why it might have been. I like the analogies
- 25 he brought. I think in terms of what we're seeing,

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 we're seeing a lot more of a play on the question of
```

- 2 predictability in our area.
- 3 At the heart of the KSR decision was everything
- 4 was out there, and you put them together, you knew what
- 5 was going to happen, and that is pretty much the
- 6 antithesis of the work we do in the biotech sector.
- 7 It's really, wow, this happened, and that kind of
- 8 perspective of unpredictable outcomes based on what you
- 9 know is really an important variable, and it's good
- 10 that it was used to elaborate some of the principles in
- 11 the decision.
- The other thing that came out of KSR which we
- see a lot now is kind of, where is the art telling you
- 14 to go rather than where are you with your patent or you
- 15 with your invention, and that kind of teaching away
- 16 concept, which historically has been a really narrow
- 17 doctrine in the patent law I think now has been loosened
- a little bit to say, you really are taking into
- 19 consideration where people -- that isn't written down in
- 20 the publication, where is that leading you and if it is
- leading you away from where the invention requires, then
- 22 hopefully you're going to be nonobvious.
- The kind of broader question that is stimulating
- 24 this panel and discussion is: What do you do to make
- 25 the patent law more certain and how can you do that to

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 facilitate better licensing conditions? Here, kind of
```

- 2 the notice functions, these variables that you've been
- 3 talking about, are peanuts compared to the thing that
- 4 dominates the life sciences area and predictability, and
- 5 in our world, in terms of the predictability of what the
- 6 patent is going to do for us, the 98 percent of the
- 7 question mark that we can't answer is something called
- 8 inequitable conduct.
- 9 In the first iteration of the FTC proceeding,
- 10 this was one of the topics that did get some discussion
- 11 but we have not seen a case, we have not seen
- legislative action, we have not seen the kind of
- 13 remedial activity in our area on that doctrine happen,
- and that's an issue that I want to flag.
- Now, we talked about the question of
- obviousness. Well, at least you have a framework to
- 17 assess it. You look at a question of infringement. You
- look at the product, you look at your patent claims, you
- 19 at least have a metric for figuring out and guessing
- where things might come out.
- If I'm asked to advice a company on
- 22 infringement, I can do that relatively cleanly. I put
- 23 my asterisks where they need to be, but you know kind of
- 24 the foundation of your opinion. If I have to go to the
- question of: Is this case enabled or described? Again

For The Record, Inc.

```
I have a framework. I can look at facts, and I can say,
```

- 2 yeah, this is what I see and it's probably going to come
- 3 out this way.
- Inequitable conduct is the mother of all, I
- 5 don't know questions, because it's entirely subjective.
- 6 It depends on what your witnesses say in their
- 7 depositions in the litigation. It is entirely dependent
- 8 upon how the story gets told in front of the court, and
- 9 at the end of the day, you won't know until it's over.
- 10 So in terms of a thing that you look at as a
- 11 predictability factor, that's the worse possible metric
- 12 you can think of for telling someone what the patent is
- going to do for you or do to you, and that's the heart
- of your decision in the licensing context.
- 15 If you look at the cases that have come out in
- 16 the last decade, we have kind of a simple subscription
- of the idea that the standard is relatively easy to
- 18 articulate: Did the patent applicant, with the intent
- 19 to deceive, misrepresent or withhold information to the
- 20 Patent Office that was material, and so that's a very
- 21 nice simple topic.
- So what does that mean? Well, material
- 23 information. That could be, as we can tell from the
- recent cases, anything, so we've had cases where
- 25 material information is failing to tell the Patent

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 Office that you are not entitled to get small entity
```

- 2 status because you licensed your patent to a company
- 3 that had more than 500 employees, okay. That's pretty
- 4 much the heart of the patentability question. That's at
- 5 the root of the Patent Office's job.
- The next thing, so I have a 7,000 pages of
- 7 experimental results that I conducted in the course of
- 8 making my invention. I have 6,9999 data points
- 9 supporting what I told you, and I have one that doesn't,
- so is it good for the system to send 7,000 pages of
- 11 experimental data to the patent examiner, who is not
- 12 going to look at it, to make sure that you're absolutely
- pure in your presentation to the Patent Office of your
- 14 belief that scientifically it is true that the condition
- 15 that made my invention meritorious is true? But that's
- 16 what we fight about.
- 17 The best one I love, which is so I filed ten
- 18 applications because the Patent Office made me file that
- because I got a restriction requirement that was 7,000
- 20 page restriction requirement and because I didn't tell
- 21 the patent examiner who is handling the case that I'm
- going to litigate about the other 7 or 10 patent
- 23 applications that he's also examining concurrently, I
- 24 now have a risk factor of inequitable conduct.
- I didn't have that written down in the record

For The Record, Inc.

```
that I had communicated to him that he's actually
```

- 2 working on the other cases that he made me divide from
- 3 the case I'm working on, and these are the things that
- 4 make up material information of the cases of the past
- 5 decade. It's the most absurd metric, which basically
- 6 comes out from the way the cases are litigated, and here
- 7 there used to be a requirement in the law that said you
- 8 had to have two variables. You had to prove that
- 9 information was material, and you had to prove that you
- 10 had intent to deceive the Patent Office.
- 11 So what every case now kind of develops early on
- into, Well, we're going to go with the super material
- information because the cases say that if it's highly
- material, if it's really really material, then I can
- 15 kind of step over and make that speed bump of an intent
- 16 to deceive almost zero, and that is essentially the way
- 17 the dynamic of the cases go now.
- 18 You start a case and you spend inordinate
- amounts of time, excessive production, commence
- 20 fighting, tons of prep of your witnesses, all around the
- 21 question of preventing a story developing from the
- 22 litigation itself that you committed inequitable conduct
- 23 before the Patent Office, which then carries with it the
- 24 penalty for you and the lottery like win for the
- 25 defendant that the case -- the patent, regardless of its

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 merits, is going to be held unenforceable.
```

- 2 So we have this wonderful doctrine which is
- 3 entirely subjective which makes it impossible for us to
- 4 tell people whether their patents are going to survive
- 5 litigation, which cover products that are worth billions
- of dollars, and this is the heart of the litigation
- 7 world that we live in in the life sciences sector.
- 8 So when we talk about, well, did you give
- 9 adequate notice about whether you're infringing or not?
- 10 I would love to have something that I could take and
- 11 make an objective metric for testing, whether I'm
- infringing, whether -- in this world of inequitable
- 13 conduct, it's remarkable that we can actually put them
- in the same footing as many of the debates we're having.
- 15 Sorry, I'm kind of running away with this topic.
- So the one question that I will go back to is
- 17 the notice requirement, and I think one thing we see in
- 18 the life sciences sector is it's not been a
- 19 traditionally difficult thing to know if you infringe a
- 20 patent on a chemical compound or biotech product.
- I think in the biotech area, we have seen that
- the use of functional language in the claims is the
- 23 necessary thing to have. You have to have that
- 24 flexibility because there's just too many variables in
- 25 the structure of a molecule of that size that you can

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 kind of change the molecule that preserves essentially
```

- 2 what the original molecule did, and you need to have
- 3 some latitude to capture equivalent molecules through
- 4 functional language.
- I don't think there's any major impediment about
- 6 translating and interpreting functional language in
- 7 litigation or outside the contours of the litigation in
- 8 our area because essentially you go back to the
- 9 specification. You see what structures do support that
- 10 function, and I think in terms of notice, when we're
- looking at a patent, either offensively or defensively,
- 12 obviously the claims tell us one thing, but we look
- through the claims and we see what is actually supported
- 14 by the specification.
- 15 We have relatively decent law now on written
- description on enablement that we can draw upon to
- determine whether the claim that we might see asserted
- against us is going to be supported, and you can kind of
- 19 peer through that and see whether there's actually a
- 20 risk. If you use the thing that is covered by the claim
- 21 but it's not found in the spec, then you know where you
- 22 stand on a liability risk, and I think that while it
- does require paying patent lawyers, which glad to hear
- that we're not the problem of cost.
- So I want that record clear.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 MS. MICHEL: Raise your right hand.
2 MR. KUSHAN: With the modest amount of effort
```

- 3 and cost, you can look at a patent and know where you
- 4 stand regarding it, if you're in the biotech or in the
- 5 life sciences area. So I will kind of stop with that,
- and I look forward to the discussion.
- 7 MS. MICHEL: Thank you. I think a very
- 8 different perspective than what we heard from Duane.
- 9 Jeff, just do you have any suggestions what to
- do about this terrible problem that you
- 11 have?
- MR. KUSHAN: Well, the inequitable conduct
- sanction is pretty much the only one I can imagine where
- if you do anything bad, you lose your house, and
- 15 illogically what you're talking about is doing something
- bad in front of a federal agency, and it seems to me
- 17 that the logical remedy for inequitable conduct is a
- 18 penalty on the party who did the bad thing to the Patent
- 19 Office, and it seems like that's been completely
- 20 detached from the standard.
- It seems also that in any other federal setting
- 22 where you have been accused of doing something of this
- 23 nature, the notion is that you get a fine or there's
- some kind of a penalty but you're not losing your
- 25 property interest, which in most of our world has a

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 value far in excess of anything which you would call a
```

- 2 reasonable fine.
- MS. MICHEL: And if you want to speak, if you
- 4 would turn your table tent up. You don't have to or you
- 5 can just -- that would be great. John, you look like
- 6 you want to say something.
- 7 PROFESSOR DUFFY: Yes. I've looked at this -- is
- 8 the heart inequitable conduct issue, and I have pretty
- 9 strong feelings on it that are similar and maybe even
- 10 more radical than Jeff's which is that the inequitable
- 11 conduct doctrine is really out of step I think with
- 12 administrative law because normally the rule that is
- applied to other administrative agencies is that the
- 14 Agency itself is in charge of its own procedures, and it
- 15 gets to determine what things have to be disclosed to
- it, and whether and to what extent it will punish people
- 17 who do not disclose things to it.
- 18 There was a case within the last ten years at
- 19 the Supreme Court where somebody perjured himself before
- 20 the National Labor Relations Board, but nonetheless, it
- 21 was always -- it's always the case of an unnecessary
- 22 perjury, right, because once you find the truth, if the
- 23 person is not entitled to a patent or relief, then of
- 24 course they don't get it.
- But in this case it was unnecessary perjury.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 For whatever reason the employee perjured himself but
```

- 2 still deserved relief under the true facts, and the NLRB
- 3 gave him the relief, and it went all the way up to the
- 4 Supreme Court because the NLRB has to seek court
- 5 approval to enforce it, seek court enforcement, and the
- 6 Supreme Court unanimously enforced the order, and said
- 7 it's up to the Agency to punish misconduct before it.
- I can go into more details about other
- 9 administrative law principles, but to give you just a
- 10 sense of how out of step the inequitable conduct
- doctrine is with administrative law is a very recent
- 12 case in which, I quess it's about three years old now,
- 13 the Federal Circuit was presented with new rules that
- the PTO had passed saying, This is what materiality
- 15 means to us, this is all the information we want
- 16 disclosed.
- 17 And the Federal Circuit said, Well, that's one
- 18 standard but we've got some others, and you have to meet
- 19 them all, and they listed literally five standards of
- 20 materiality and said you have to meet them all, but
- 21 we're not overturning the PTO's materiality standard.
- You just have to meet other ones too.
- 23 Well, that of course is ridiculous. If you have
- 24 to disclose -- if you have to meet five standards of
- 25 materiality and if the PTO is one of the more modest

For The Record, Inc.

```
ones, well, you still have to meet all the others. That
```

- 2 actually I think violates a very basic case in
- 3 administrative law called Vermont Yankee which says
- 4 agencies actually get to determine their own procedural
- 5 rules.
- 6 So I think that this area of the law, that you
- 7 can't find very many inequitable conducts cases prior to
- 8 1970. You can find one Supreme Court case that says if
- 9 you violate the minimal ethical standards, and in a case
- 10 where actually the misconduct weaves over into a
- judicial proceeding, that will lead to unenforceability,
- but prior to 19 -- certainly prior to 1940, there was
- 13 never a case in which the courts held unenforceable
- patent, and indeed they had rules about this, and they
- 15 said, you have to get the government to care about
- 16 whatever misconduct occurred.
- 17 So we lived for a long time without this rule.
- 18 It's inconsistent with administrative law. It leads to
- vast uncertainty, and it punishes the patentholder and
- the inventor and the company when what we're really
- 21 talking about, if it has occurred, it's attorney
- 22 misconduct, so it doesn't even punish -- you said you
- 23 lose your house. You lose somebody -- I lose my house
- 24 because something else -- somebody else did it who maybe
- 25 should be disbarred or something else if it's really

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 terrible.
```

- 2 MR. KUSHAN: I lose my factory.
- 3 PROFESSOR DUFFY: Yeah, you lose your factory,
- 4 and it's because your lawyer was unethical, though most
- of these cases, if you actually look through them, don't
- 6 involve any misrepresentations. They involve lack of
- 7 disclosure, and when it's not even clear the agency
- 8 wanted that information.
- 9 That's something you, as an administrative
- 10 agency outside the system, should probably understand,
- and you might be able to give a different perspective
- 12 on.
- 13 MS. MICHEL: Joe?
- 14 PROFESSOR MILLER: Yeah. Especially sitting
- where I am right now, I'm not about to defend
- inequitable conduct as it currently exists because I'll
- 17 get battered with water bottles, but it seems to me in
- 18 any realistic sense that in order to eliminate that
- doctrine, which apart from all the bad it may do, does
- 20 have the benefit of incenting both the lawyers and their
- 21 clients to fly right when they're at the Patent Office,
- 22 right.
- You guys aren't mentioning the misconduct
- deterred, which is a good thing, right, so we need to
- 25 find some other way to deter that misconduct, and there

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 could be lots of ways to do it, an inspector general's
```

- 2 office at the PTO that randomly selects prosecution
- 3 histories to go through with a fine tooth comb. There
- 4 are all kinds of mechanisms that can been used, so I'm
- 5 not arguing for the current rule.
- 6 What I'm arguing for is some way to grapple with
- 7 the fact that in an ex parte system where you get
- 8 national rights of exclusion that can be highly
- 9 valuable, you can expect bad behavior if no one is
- 10 watching so you have to watch some way.
- 11 MS. MICHEL: Duane?
- 12 MR. VALZ: Yeah. I'm just going to say that
- inequitable conduct, the state of it, of the law now is
- much like willfulness used to be, where you really have
- some tails wagging the dog. You might have a basic
- legal principle, and the derivative legal principles
- that come from it have these absurd consequences, and
- 18 willfulness was about an entire litigation defense,
- 19 perhaps having to give up privilege because of all of
- 20 the contortions you have to do around the due care
- 21 standard.
- 22 And here certainly you need something to
- 23 disincent misconduct, but the events that can have that
- happen have become so absurd that the doctrine really
- just needs to be reformed.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              MS. MICHEL:
                           Mike?
 2
              PROFESSOR MEURER: A quick follow up on what
      Duane just said. It's a bit ironic I guess that those
 3
 4
      people that read a lot of patents have a lot to disclose
 5
      and some are more at risk for the inequitable conduct,
 6
      so it doesn't seem like a good situation.
 7
                           Interesting. All right.
              MS. MICHEL:
 8
      wondering if anyone had any reactions to John's
 9
      suggestion on secondary considerations and obviousness.
10
      Joe?
              PROFESSOR MILLER: John and I have talked about
11
12
      this many times, so he knows that what I'm about to do
13
      is grab a pom-pom and go yeah. The objective of it,
14
      here is what's so important about it. In addition to
15
      the quite cogent conceptual presentation is that we've
16
      actually had really good experience with this approach
17
      before in the sense that a great deal of Learned Hand's
      approach to the non-obviousness inquiry, although at
18
19
      that point in time it was called the invention inquiry,
20
      utilized these objective evidence points to really
21
      conduct very compelling inquiries about why the
22
      invention happened when it did, what were the
```

And as he said, there is no better way to know what average artisans would do than to look at what they For The Record, Inc.

circumstances in the art.

23

24

25

```
1 have done. That's the basic insight, and so we've got
```

- 2 lots of case law to draw on, so we can explore this new
- 3 way of thinking about things in a sense that isn't new.
- We have one of the greatest jurists of the 20th Century
- 5 who actually marked out a lot of very important ideas
- 6 here so let's draw on that experience.
- 7 MS. MICHEL: All right. Jeff?
- 8 MR. KUSHAN: To join the fan club, I think it is
- 9 particularly now, after we've had KSR and we're kind of
- in this period where we're seeing the nuances kind of
- 11 start to get developed in the Federal Circuit jurisprudence.
- 12 I think it is a very good thing to think through,
- whether these ideas can be developed and hold out a little
- 14 bit.
- 15 I think it is the case that when you have a
- story to tell it usually falls into one of those
- 17 secondary consideration baskets. I think you have to
- 18 also step back and look at the poor Patent Office, and
- 19 also keep in mind that at the time that they're looking
- 20 at your patent application, it's usually before your
- 21 story is over, whether it's commercial success or
- 22 whether it actually has stepped in and filled the need
- of the market.
- So whether the standards or concepts that get
- developed map well into the Patent Office phase of the

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 evaluation of the invention is one question, but
```

- 2 fundamentally at least for the jurisprudential effect,
- 3 it should be not discriminated against and put into a
- 4 kind of box that you only get to if you've gone pass
- 5 your from prima facie fight.
- There's a structure to obviousness inquiries
- 7 that pushes the question to the back of the bus, and
- 8 that notion of not having it part of the integrated
- 9 thought about whether the invention is obvious is a
- 10 really good idea to capture.
- MS. MICHEL: We heard this morning also about
- 12 the notice problem that Professor Meurer talked about.
- Do any of you have comments on the source of that
- 14 problem and also how can it be addressed? We didn't
- 15 talk about that. Duane?
- MR. VALZ: Well, I think the notice problem in
- 17 the way that Professor Meurer talks about it really
- 18 comes down to the fact that patents are linguistic
- 19 entities as well as technical entities, and you're
- 20 always going to have difficulties in mapping language to
- 21 technology that escapes the naked eye. You can't pull
- out gears and pullies, and that's just a feature of it,
- and that's why we have things like novelty and
- 24 non-obviousness inquiries, and we have a literary record
- 25 around what's been done and how it's been done in the

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 past.
- 2 And I think necessarily it's a dialogue with
- 3 prior art in terms of defining your property boundaries,
- 4 and the fact that it's always a difficult exercise and
- 5 maybe a little more so in the era of nanotechnology and
- 6 functionality that happens on minute scales shouldn't be
- 7 some kind of disqualifying condition. That's just part
- 8 of the art of practicing the law, and I think it can be
- 9 done well.
- 10 I think some of the issues in the software and
- 11 Internet spaces that's happened have to do with the fact
- that there's a dearth of prior art because it hadn't
- been allowed so long, and I think a fair comparison
- 14 would be not just a contemporaneous between industries,
- 15 but if you look at the relative age of an industry and
- 16 you go backwards in time to see when the chemical
- industry and the biotech industries were really coming
- 18 up to see how chaotic and maybe unsteady some of the
- 19 issues were.
- I don't believe that some of these issues of
- 21 linguistics should be really made more problematic than
- they need to be.
- MS. MICHEL: Mike?
- PROFESSOR MEURER: Three comments I guess. I'll
- 25 try to control myself.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 MS. MICHEL: Don't.
```

- 2 PROFESSOR MEURER: Well, I'll come back if
- 3 there's more time, but one of the things that Duane just
- 4 said, in the book we talk about software patents in
- 5 particular, and we address the question: Is this a
- 6 transitional problem? Is the PTO getting better? Are
- 7 the courts getting better over time? The answer seem to
- 8 be, no, they're getting worse.
- 9 If you look at a software patent born in the
- 10 year 2000 and ask: What are odds that it will show up
- in a patent lawsuit by the year 2004, that number is
- 12 greater then if you took a software patent born the year
- 13 1990, and that's actually steadily true over each age
- 14 cohort.
- 15 So that it seems as if our performance with
- software patents has deteriorated over time, even though
- 17 we're accumulating prior art and we're accumulating
- 18 value.
- MR. VALZ: Maybe that's a bad measure.
- 20 Litigation follows money. Maybe if you look at the
- 21 software and Internet industries since 2000 and you look
- 22 at comparative industries and when litigation spikes,
- that's a better correlation.
- 24 PROFESSOR MEURER: In the larger study, we
- 25 actually do control for all those things. That

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 particular study, though I confess we did not, but the
```

- 2 study as a whole about the hazard as I told you was
- 3 increasing across all industries, and that was carefully
- 4 controlling for measures of value.
- 5 Two other points. I like the comment Jeff made
- 6 about biotech and notice, and I would second his
- 7 emphasis on 112. If we've got good, strong written
- 8 description and good, strong enablement, then maybe
- 9 functional claiming is less of a problem.
- 10 Something implicit in what Jeff was saying is
- 11 that there's a trade-off between good notice and scope
- in some cases, and so a sensible ground for attack of my
- argument is that we will sacrifice too much in scope in
- 14 the quest of good notice.
- I think that there are many opportunities to
- avoid that trade-off completely, to increase clarity, to
- increase notice without sacrificing scope. Not quite on
- 18 point, but I'm accumulating data right now to almost
- 19 answer Jeff's question, not looking at biotech, but
- looking at pharma, and I think I am finding that within
- 21 pharma, relatively functionally claimed inventions, for
- 22 example, the formulations of drugs, are litigated much
- 23 more often than patents on active ingredients.
- I see a disparity in those two categories.
- 25 There's actually four categories that I've taken a look For The Record, Inc.

```
1 at, between the more structurally claimed pharma patents
```

- 2 and the more functionally claimed pharma patents, finding
- 3 that latter to be more problematic.
- Back to Suzanne's original question: So besides
- 5 pushing for stronger 112 in areas outside of biotech and
- 6 pharma, an easy thing for us to do, another easy thing
- 7 for us to do is to take the definiteness requirement
- 8 seriously, and 'solidly ambiguous' is a disaster.
- 9 The PTO, those poor examiners have little time
- 10 to do much of anything, but if the only thing they did
- 11 was started chopping out indefinite claim language, we
- would be in much better shape than we are today.
- MS. MICHEL: Thank you. John?
- 14 PROFESSOR DUFFY: I want to say that Michael's
- 15 presentation does point out a very, very basic problem
- that's always been in the patent system in the sense
- 17 that what the patent system is trying to do is to create
- 18 property rights at the very edges of technology and
- 19 human understanding.
- It should not at all be surprising that we have
- 21 immense difficulties, and only a very sophisticated
- 22 society can actually have a patent system. They didn't
- 23 exist in the classical world, so you need a very legally
- 24 sophisticated society in order to do this.
- I don't think that merely because we see that

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 there are some industries that may have developed a
```

- 2 relatively precise language, that simply because those
- 3 are better, that we should think that the patent system
- 4 isn't working in the other industries.
- 5 Michael targets the functional language, and I
- 6 think that there are is something else going on. I
- 7 think that Michael does make a very good presentation
- 8 that something is changing overall at the Federal
- 9 Circuit level and at the level of interpreting what
- 10 patents mean.
- I think that has been actually an excessive
- 12 literalism, and that patent claims used to be
- interpreted and indeed you can find -- this is the way
- 14 the Supreme Court always did it. They always used the
- 15 doctrine of equivalents as a second step to limit
- 16 literal language.
- So in other words, the rule that you see for
- 18 patent lawyers out there, the rule that you see in
- 19 Section 112, paragraph 6, that was never
- supposed to be a different rule than the normal
- 21 infringement rule. That was the rule of going back to
- 22 the specification and making sure that what was said in
- 23 the claims actually had some basis in the specification
- and that that sort of gets around literalism.
- It sort of accepts the problem that we're not

For The Record, Inc.

```
1 going to be able to create literal language that always
```

- 2 describes things, and this is not -- I want to make this
- 3 clear. This is not pro -- this is not anti inventor to
- 4 do that. Indeed I think as a case study, you should
- 5 use -- to look at the question of functional claim
- 6 language, you should look -- or the Wright patent to look
- 7 at is the Wright patent, which is a case study in my
- 8 case book because that used purely functional terms in
- 9 its claim language.
- 10 And the great thing about it is, Joe and I are
- 11 big fans of Learned Hand. You have an opinion of
- 12 Learned Hand. How could you not love this case? It's
- one of the most famous patent cases, and the most famous
- patent judge, and there is a very hard issue in there
- about the way they claimed, and they claimed
- 16 functionally, purely functionally.
- 17 There's two answers, the one that Learned Hand
- gave them or the opposite, which would have given them
- 19 exactly \$0 as an award for their invention, so
- 20 it's an interesting case study to see, to sort of point
- 21 out whether it's really functional claiming that we're
- 22 angry about or maybe it's excessively literalism, which
- 23 I think is a problem, and maybe that's not inconsistent
- 24 with what Michael is saying. Maybe that's similar to
- what he's saying.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              MS. MICHEL:
                           Joe?
 2
              PROFESSOR MILLER: Yeah. I want to add just
 3
      another layer of historical context around what's been
 4
      said, especially about the connection between claim
 5
      language and the disclosure, and one thing that is
 6
      striking is if you go back and grab a batch of patents
 7
      from 1908, they look the same as patents from 2008.
 8
              Now, so what? Well, as the Chairman mentioned
 9
      this morning, right, if you're trying to run broadband
10
      rules on a dial up platform, things can get a little
      inky. Well, we're running on a whip and buggy platform
11
      in the sense that I wonder what a team of information
12
13
      scientists today would say the optimal patent disclosure
14
      and claiming document should look like if they got to
15
      design it from the ground up.
16
              I wonder if they would come out with a document
17
      which doesn't have any general crosslinking, doesn't use
      different colors of text to mark different concepts when
18
19
      things were introduced during prosecution, right? I
20
      mean it's just a little odd I think that the patent
21
      itself, as a document, hasn't changed in more than a
22
      hundred years. Weird.
23
              MS. MICHEL: All right. Mike?
24
              PROFESSOR MEURER: John is right.
25
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

Thank you.

For The Record, Inc.

PROFESSOR DUFFY:

```
1 PROFESSOR MILLER: Being too nice to you today,
```

- 2 John.
- 3 PROFESSOR DUFFY: The Federal Circuit may not in
- 4 May.
- 5 PROFESSOR MEURER: I'll tell you why. In my
- 6 talk, I gave an unqualified disparagement of functional
- 7 claiming, and Jeff pointed out that that was a bit
- 8 problematic. John pointed out that's problematic, so
- 9 let me restate my position, that structural claims seem
- 10 to work well, provide give notice. Functional claims
- 11 are problematic. We need a good body of patent law
- 12 surrounding them or working with them for them to
- 13 succeed.
- 14 So I think as Jeff pointed out it would be great
- 15 if we did a better job of applying written description
- and enablement. In the book, unlike what Duane
- 17 suspects, we don't advocate abolishing software patents,
- 18 although we do make a contingent statement. We say, we
- 19 need lots of reforms, and if these reforms don't work
- then, maybe we'll think about abolishing software
- 21 patents, but we're conservative, and we want to work
- through all of what appear to be the straightforward
- 23 sorts of reforms before we move to that radical
- 24 position.
- So I don't think that this is a statement that For The Record, Inc.

```
1 certain kinds of technology cannot be successfully
```

- 2 patented. I'm optimistic. I think they can. I also
- 3 want to note though that functional claiming is not just
- 4 an issue for software. We see functional claiming of
- 5 biohazard, of binds, of sofas, of prison walls. In
- fact, it's kind of puzzling, but you look at most of
- 7 these famous Federal Circuit cases and they're dealing
- 8 with pretty pedestrian kinds of technologies.
- 9 You look at books that teach people how to draft
- 10 patents, and clearly the message is draft functionally.
- 11 Draft abstractly. Your mission of course is to claim
- 12 the biggest juiciest property right you can, and the
- 13 Court's or the PTO haven't done what they should do to
- 14 counterbalance the clear incentives sitting out there in
- 15 front of patent attorneys.
- MR. ADKINSON: Most of this discussion has
- 17 focused on how the patent document could be made clearer
- 18 through application of various doctrines. In the first
- 19 panel this morning we heard about the difficulty of lack
- of likelihood that we would ever see the relevant patent
- 21 documents before you made investments, and so I would
- just like to throw that broad question open to: Is that
- 23 a problem, in what particular industries, and what might
- 24 we do about it?
- MS. MICHEL: Do you want to limit continuations?

 For The Record, Inc.
 - (301) 870-8025 www.ftrinc.net (800) 921-5555

```
1 And how did it go this morning? Jeff, please?
```

- 2 MR. KUSHAN: So fortuitously I had my flag up,
- 3 so on the question of continuations, it's not -- I think
- 4 very clearly in the history of the biotech area has been
- 5 that those are necessary to make sure that you actually
- 6 get to an end point where you end up with a patent that
- 7 is worth something, and the value for companies to have
- 8 the option to keep pushing forward to get the claims
- 9 they need is very, very important.
- I understand one of the biggest challenges of
- 11 having a longer window of time in front of the Patent
- 12 Office is that your claims evolve to match what you find
- in the marketplace, and it seems to me that something
- 14 short of the stupid rules that you can come up with and
- 15 say one shot and that's it, a much more granular
- solution needs to be found, and that solution needs to
- 17 be looking at when you present claims and how they
- 18 relate to what you put in there before.
- The problem I think that many people have
- 20 outside the biotech area has been that the claims morph
- 21 over time, and eventually have no tie to what is
- 22 actually invented.
- MS. MICHEL: So you're sort of supporting Mike's
- 24 point of stronger 112 requirements in the biotech
- industry. He's nodding, let the record is not going to

For The Record, Inc.

- 1 reflect that.
- 2 MR. KUSHAN: I do. I think historically -- so
- 3 we feel fairly confident we have a good balance in the
- 4 biotech and life sciences sector because we can -- we
- 5 look in the specification, we see if there is a
- 6 correspondence between the claim scope and what we've
- 7 written down, what we've invented, and I think one of
- 8 the challenges -- just historically I did have a time
- 9 when I was in the Patent Office where we were working on
- 10 software examination standards.
- 11 We found one of the biggest challenges was
- 12 figuring out what was invented. There's no uniform
- 13 nomenclature. Everybody has complete freedom to write
- 14 whatever they want, and so it's not like you can
- 15 complain about the claims being fuzzy. You can claim
- about the entirety of the description being fuzzy. It's
- 17 just all fuzz.
- So the examiners, who get 18 hours to figure
- 19 everything out, look at this, and say, I can't -- I
- don't even know what you invented, so certainly some
- 21 kind of a point of pressure that needs to be applied in
- the areas that don't enjoy the benefit of objective
- 23 descriptions like ours is to get that, some kind of a
- tool in the hands of the examiners to figure out what
- 25 has been described as the invention.

For The Record, Inc.

```
1
              The last point will be: We've seen evolve the
 2
      written description and enablement doctrines.
 3
      enablement was always looked at from what you gave me,
 4
      can you get to what you claimed, and from the written
 5
      description that has now evolved to: What did you
 6
      actually make and do and describe, and how does that
 7
      relate to your claims.
 8
              That second variable I see as being very
 9
      powerful in addressing some of the claim scope and
10
      transparency issues you see with the software claiming
11
      issue.
12
              MS. MICHEL: All right. And I could do this all
13
      day, but we should wrap up soon, so any final comments,
14
      Mike, please? I did not mean to cut you off there, just
15
      to say that we'll have final comments and wrap up.
16
              PROFESSOR MEURER: Well, one final comment. I
17
      kind of meta answer to Bill's last question is clear
      notice I think will facilitate good licensing.
18
19
      Someone's good a technology out there. They're living
      in a world that's populated by a lot of bad patents that
20
21
      kind of discourages people from finding them and
22
      licensing them.
23
              So good notices should promote the good licenses
```

24

25

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

and it should punish the trolls or it should punish at

least trolling the way most people do, but it should

```
1
      punish any person that's trying to assert a patent with
 2
      this only slender argument that it's got a scope that
 3
      actually covers the technology they're asserting it
 4
      against.
 5
              So a good notice could cut down on the bad
 6
      licenses and increase the good licenses.
 7
              MS. MICHEL: All right. Yes, John, final
 8
      comments? You can close down the show. Okay.
 9
              PROFESSOR DUFFY: No, no, no. I won't close
10
      down the show.
                           In that case, this has been a very
11
              MS. MICHEL:
12
      helpful and interesting conversation, and I want to
13
      thank all of our panelists, thank the audience who
14
      stayed, and please, I'll put in one more plug, for we
15
      want your comments, and feel free to actually just
      contact us informally. We would love to hear from you.
16
17
              Thank you.
18
              (Applause.)
19
              (Whereupon, at 5:17 p.m. the hearing was
20
      concluded.)
21
22
23
24
```

(301) 870-8025 - www.ftrinc.net - (800) 921-5555

For The Record, Inc.

25